

Министерство культуры Республики Беларусь  
Белорусский государственный университет культуры и искусств

# **STUDYING CULTURE**

# **АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК**

Учебно-методическое пособие  
для студентов всех специальностей

*Рекомендовано учебно-методическим объединением  
по образованию в области культуры и искусств*

2-е издание, исправленное и доработанное

Минск  
БГУКИ  
2022

УДК 811.111'373(075.8)  
ББК 81.432.1-9-3я73  
S90

Авторы:

А. А. Филиппов (Unit 1), М. И. Кусков (Unit 2), Н. В. Кармазина, Э. Е. Платонова, Н. В. Лещенко (Units 3, 5, 11), С. Г. Безмен, Т. П. Бируля (Units 6, 8–10), М. С. Гутковская, Е. Л. Кудрявцева (Units 4, 7, 12), Е. П. Лубинская, Д. Б. Попова (Unit 13)

Рецензенты:

*кафедра иностранных языков филологического факультета учреждения образования «Белорусский государственный педагогический университет им. Максима Танка»;*  
*А. В. Морозов, доктор филологических наук, профессор, профессор кафедры кадровой политики и психологии управления учреждения образования «Академия управления при Президенте Республики Беларусь»*

S90

**Studying Culture.** Английский язык : учеб.-метод. пособие / А. А. Филиппов [и др.] ; М-во культуры Респ. Беларусь, Белорус. гос. ун-т культуры и искусств. – 2-е изд., испр. и дораб. – Минск : БГУКИ, 2022. – 222 с.  
ISBN 978-985-522-309-3.

Пособие предназначено для студентов, изучающих английский язык в Белорусском государственном университете культуры и искусств и других учебных заведениях гуманитарного профиля, и имеет целью совершенствование различных видов речевой деятельности на английском языке на базе современных материалов по культурологической тематике.

УДК 811.111'373(075.8)  
ББК 81.432.1-9-3я73

ISBN 978-985-522-309-3

© Учреждение образования  
«Белорусский государственный  
университет культуры и искусств», 2022

## CONTENTS

<b>ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ</b> .....	4
<b>UNIT 1 About Myself</b> .....	6
<b>UNIT 2 Language and Language Learning</b> .....	12
<b>UNIT 3 University Education</b> .....	23
<b>UNIT 4 Mass Media</b> .....	48
<b>UNIT 5 English-Speaking Countries</b> .....	61
<b>UNIT 6 Festivals and Celebrations in Great Britain and the United States of America</b> .....	84
<b>UNIT 7 Modern Travel</b> .....	104
<b>UNIT 8 The Republic of Belarus</b> .....	120
<b>UNIT 9 Belarusian National Culture</b> .....	136
<b>UNIT 10 Books in Our Life</b> .....	149
<b>UNIT 11 Theatre</b> .....	164
<b>UNIT 12 Music</b> .....	176
<b>UNIT 13 My Future Profession</b> .....	187
<b>BIBLIOGRAPHY</b> .....	204
<b>APPENDICES</b> .....	206

## ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

В XXI веке особое значение при подготовке специалиста любого профиля, в том числе и в сфере культуры, приобретает овладение иностранным языком. Курс иностранного языка для неязыковых специальностей вузов должен носить профессионально ориентированный характер. Данная направленность обучения иностранному языку в высшей школе продиктована причинами как объективного, так и субъективного характера.

Объективной причиной является потребность в специалистах высшей квалификации, владеющих иностранным языком. Разумеется, что чем раньше начнется овладение терминологией какой-либо отрасли знаний и в соответствии с этим обучению иностранному языку будет придан профильный характер, тем больше вероятность того, что иностранный язык будет эффективно использоваться в профессиональных целях.

Субъективные причины определяются следующими факторами. Для успешного овладения иностранным языком он должен быть включен в систему жизненных интересов личности. Одним из таких постоянно действующих интересов для большинства учащихся является все то, что связано с их профессиональным самоопределением, с углублением в избранную сферу деятельности. Если в процессе занятий иностранным языком учащийся почувствует, что этот предмет помогает ему овладеть выбранной профессией, узнать о ней нечто новое, углубиться в соответствующую область знания, более успешно решать встающие перед ним задачи, то иностранный язык приобретет для него личностный смысл, станет постоянно действующим фактором мотивации обучения.

До недавнего времени конечной целью преподавания иностранных языков в неязыковом вузе являлось обучение различным видам чтения с целью изучения литературы по специальности и извлечения необходимой информации. В настоящее время основной акцент преподавания сместился на обучение

устной и письменной речи. При этом обучение чтению не снимается с повестки дня, а становится основой для обучения другим видам речевой деятельности.

Цели предлагаемого учебного пособия:

– комплексное обучение студентов специальностей вузов культуры и искусств различным видам речевой деятельности (чтению, аудированию, говорению и письму) на английском языке на базе материалов, разработанных преподавателями кафедры, и взятых из аутентичных источников;

– развитие у студентов навыков устной речи во всех ее разновидностях (монолог, сообщение, диалог, дискуссия и др.) по широкому кругу актуальных и коммуникативно значимых проблем социального, страноведческого характера на основе прочитанных и прослушанных текстов, а также выполненных в письменном виде творческих заданий.

Материалы пособия были подготовлены с использованием оригинальных источников, изданных в Великобритании и США, а также информации из ряда современных электронных энциклопедий и международной глобальной сети Интернет. Литературные источники приводятся в библиографическом списке в конце пособия. Принципами отбора текстов были их насыщенность тематической лексикой и соответствие ее современным нормам словоупотребления.

Каждый раздел содержит основной текст для изучающего чтения и ряд дополнительных текстов для обучения другим видам чтения, переводу и реферированию. Работа с текстом предполагает несколько этапов: предтекстовый, текстовый и послетекстовый. На каждом из них предлагается серия упражнений и заданий, последовательное выполнение которых позволяет постепенно сформировать навыки и умения в различных видах речевой деятельности. Упражнения служат также средством развития их творческих способностей, так как продолжают тематику основного текста и варьируют его языковой материал. Задания предполагают взаимосвязь различных видов речевой деятельности, что характерно для естественного общения.

Авторы выражают искреннюю благодарность рецензентам за ценные замечания и пожелания, высказанные при подготовке пособия.

# UNIT 1 About Myself

## Vocabulary

personality	hard-working
responsible	energetic
support	enthusiastic
self-driven	cheerful
capability	sociable
around the clock	witty
surf the Internet	generous
unpredictable	persistent
diverse	well-bred
explore	absent-minded
sensitive	indecisive
bright	selfish
smart	shy

### Pre-reading activities:

**1. Match the following adjectives 1-20 with the correct meanings a)-t) to form complete sentences:**

People who are:

1. absent-minded	a) like to say how good they are at something
2. adventurous	b) have strong feelings and are easily moved by things
3. amusing	c) are rude and disrespectful, especially towards people like parents and teachers
4. bashful	d) are always trying to control others without worrying or caring about how they feel
5. boastful	e) deliberately try to hurt or harm others
6. bright	f) are very forgetful because they are too busy thinking about other things
7. calm	g) are sure of themselves and their abilities
8. cheeky	h) are easily tricked and tend to believe everything they are told
9. conceited	i) are very clever and learn things quickly
10. confident	j) hate having to wait for things and are not very tolerant of other people's weaknesses

11. creative	k) are very interested and excited about something and this shows in the way they talk or behave
12. domineering	l) are daring and always ready to take risks
13. down-to-earth	m) are always friendly and welcoming towards guests
14. emotional	n) don't get excited or nervous about things
15. enthusiastic	o) find it hard to accept or understand new or different ideas
16. gullible	p) are very funny and make you laugh
17. hospitable	q) are very practical and honest
18. impatient	r) have a very high opinion of themselves
19. malicious	s) find it easy to produce new and original ideas and things
20. narrow-minded	t) are shy and feel uncomfortable in social situations

### **Reading activities**

**Read the following texts and be ready to speak about yourself:**

My name is Jane and I was born in London, England on the second of September, 1998. My family is an averaged-sized English family; I have a mother, a father and a brother. My mother is a housewife but does some part-time work every morning at the local college of higher education. My father is now retired but he used to work as a research chemist in a pharmaceutical company. My brother's name is Michael, he is twenty one years old and he is at university in Liverpool. He is studying engineering.

I have just finished St. Ann's Convent School in Southampton where I obtained four "A" levels. My immediate plans are to go to Manchester University and study Russian because I have always been interested in foreign languages. My mother is Italian so I can speak Italian fluently and I was lucky enough to study both French and German at school. While I was at school I also had an opportunity to learn a musical instrument. In my spare time I practice my flute.

I also enjoy meeting my friends at the weekend when we usually watch a film together and chat or go to clubs. When I have a lot of free time I like to read a good book, I particularly enjoy the

traditional English classics like Charles Dickens and Thomas Hardy. If I have a lot of time I even like to do some cooking.

I am pretty responsible and I do what I am supposed to do. At the moment, I am a university student. I do my best to be bright in everything. I also help out friends and groupmates when they need help. I give out suggestions to them when they need support.

I am a self-driven, motivated person. I have capability to work under extremely stressful conditions. I am used to working long and hard hours, around the clock.

My interests include surfing the Internet in order to keep updating my knowledge. I guess my basic instinct is to keep learning and exploring. Reading has been my hobby since childhood, and it is an activity I dedicate most of my weekend time to.

One of my other interests is shopping. Even if it is just window shopping, I find myself always ready for it. I guess the process of shopping also involves exploring various articles, in search of the perfect one. This could be a reason of being interested in shopping.

Another aspect of my personality is that I am very creative. I think creativity is the key to any situation. One has to think creatively in order to break down a problem into the smaller and more manageable components.

### **HOW TO SPEAK ABOUT ONESELF**

1. Hello/ Hi/ Good morning/ Good day/ Good afternoon/ Good evening
2. Let me introduce myself. My name is... / I am...
3. I am 20/ I am 20 years old/ I am 30 years of age
4. I am a first-year student/ I work as a ...
5. This year I've finished school and entered the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts.
7. Apart from studies / besides studies / outside my studies I'm interested / I go in for...
8. I enjoy/ like/ am fond of / am keen on...
9. It is a good way to relax/ have fun/ have a rest
10. Apart from me, there are 2/ 3/ 4 people in my family. They are:...
11. My brother is... (enumerate your family members and name their occupation)
12. Usually we ... together with my family



13. It is difficult to describe myself. The most difficult thing is to tell something objective about myself, but I'll try. I think I am ...

## **ADDITIONAL READING ACTIVITIES**

### **ADDITIONAL READING 1**

**1. Read the following text and give its general idea. Is there anything doubtful in the text? Express your opinion.**

#### **Appearance. Character. Beauty.**

How important is your appearance? Although everyone wants to be good-looking, are beautiful people always happier people? For example, it must be a problem to be a really beautiful woman, because some men may be more interested in looking at you than talking to you. They think of you as a picture rather than a person. There are also some people who think that women who are exceptionally pretty and men who are particularly handsome must be stupid. They believe that only unattractive people can be intelligent.

On the other hand, no one wants to be really ugly, and have a face that even your mother doesn't want to look at; and no one wants to be plain either – that is, to be neither attractive nor unattractive, and have a face that is easily forgotten.

Being attractive is like being rich – it can help you find happiness, but it doesn't always make you happy. So maybe the best thing is not to worry too much about how you look like, but simply try to be an interesting person. For interesting people have interesting faces, and interesting faces are almost always attractive.

#### **2. Answer the following questions:**

1. Do you judge about people by their looks or behaviour?
2. Does one's appearance presuppose certain behaviour?
3. How do people behave in the community if they are aware of their beauty?
4. What is the most important thing to be in the center of attention?
5. Why do beautiful people tend to become film stars or top models?

## ADDITIONAL READING 2

### Introducing Yourself

How many times have you heard the phrase *Tell me about yourself?*

You might hear it when you meet someone new. You may also hear it in the classroom, as a way for people **to get to know each other**.

The following phrases will help you to talk about yourself, depending on the situation:

What's your name? My name is...

How old are you? I'm ... years old.

What do you do? (Are you a student? Are you working? Are you not in a job right now?) I 'm a/an...

Where do you live? Do you like living there? I live in.... I like /don't like living there because...

Where do you come from? What is your hometown? I come from... My hometown is...

In an informal situation like meeting someone **at** a party / **in** a classroom, people would like to hear about what you do, how you know people **at** the party / **in** the classroom and what you enjoy doing in your **spare time**.

In a formal situation like an interview, people want to hear about your **educational background** and your **working / professional background**.

Here are some examples:

My name is... This year I entered the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts. I'm an easy going person that communicates well with everyone. When I study, I want to work hard. Outside of classes, in my spare time I like to relax and listen to music.

I would like to introduce Peter. He is from England and he is 24 years old. Peter is a manager at the head office of his company. He enjoys art, playing guitar and reading. He also loves learning languages and the cultures connected with them.

A more extended variant can be like this one:

My name or first name is... My surname or last name is ....

Now, **I am a first-year student** of the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts. In four years I'll be an ...

In May I finished school / college in Hrodna. I did well in all the subjects but my favourite subjects were .... I also enjoyed English lessons. In July I entered our University.

I come from Hrodna and I study in Minsk. So, I need some **housing**. There are two opportunities for me: I can live in a **dormitory** (a students' **hostel**), or **to rent a flat (an apartment)**.

I decided to rent a flat. In order to make the rent smaller, I also decided to **share** my flat with another person from our University.

### **ADDITIONAL READING 3**

**Read the following recommendations and get ready to use them speaking about yourself at the job interview:**

One of the most dreaded interview questions is “So, tell me about yourself”. Your response will set the tone for the entire interview. You should be prepared. Here are five recommendations.

#### **Focus**

List five strengths you have that are pertinent to this job – experience, traits, skills, etc. What do you want the interviewer to remember about you most?

#### **Script**

Prepare a script that includes the information you want to convey. Talk about past experiences and proven success.

#### **Mention your strengths and abilities**

Example: “My real strength is my attention to detail. I pride myself on my reputation for following through and meeting deadlines. When I commit to doing something, I make sure it gets done, and on time”.

#### **Conclude with a statement about your current situation**

#### **Practice**

Practice your script until you feel confident about what you want to emphasize. Your script should help you stay on track, but you shouldn't memorize it. You don't want to sound stiff and rehearsed. It should sound natural and conversational.

# UNIT 2 Language and Language Learning

---

## Vocabulary

ancestor	infinite
language	generation
communication	consensus
dialect	brain
particular	century
origin	society
variety	tongue
to diversify	particular

### Pre-reading activities:

#### 1. Pronounce the following geographic names:

Africa, Armenia, Australia, Austria, Azerbaijan, Baltic, Belarus, Canada, China, Germany, Great Britain, Italy, Japan, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, Lithuania, Moldova, New Zealand, Poland, Russia, Switzerland, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, Ukraine, the United States, Uzbekistan.

### Reading Activities

#### Read the text below and render it:

#### What is a Language?

A language is a system of communication which consists of a set of sounds and written symbols which are used by the people of a particular country or region for talking or writing. Language distinguishes human culture from all forms of animal culture.

Through elaborate use of symbols, language enables people to express complex ideas and to communicate about objects and events that are distant in time and place. By using language, human beings have developed the ability to reason and to solve problems on a far higher level than any other animal. Language also enables human beings to pass on knowledge and skills from generation to generation. No one knows when or how spoken language developed. Language is the different sounds made by people to

communicate. Language is the main means of communication between peoples.

According to linguists, there are about 6,000 languages spoken in the world today. This number does not include dialects. However, only 12 are widely used: Arabic, Cantonese, English, French, German, Hindi, Italian, Japanese, Mandarin, Russian, and Spanish. Each of these languages is spoken by over 100 million people. Many languages are spoken only by small groups of a few hundred or a few thousand people.

Language is human speech, either spoken or written. Language is the most common system of communication. It allows people to talk to each other and to write their thoughts and ideas. The word 'language' may be loosely used to mean any system of communication, such as traffic lights or Indian smoke signals. But the origin of the word shows its basic use. It comes from the Latin word 'lingua', meaning 'tongue'. And a language still is often called a tongue.

Wherever there is human society, there is language. Most forms of human activity depend on the cooperation of two or more people. A common language enables human beings to work together in an infinite variety of ways. Language has made possible the development of advanced, technological civilization. Without language for communication, there would be little or no science, religion, commerce, government, art, literature, and philosophy.

Languages evolve and diversify over time, and the history of their evolution can be reconstructed by comparing modern languages to determine which traits their ancestral languages must have had in order for the later developmental stages to occur. A group of languages that descend from a common ancestor is known as a language family. The Indo-European family is the most widely spoken and includes English, Spanish, Portuguese, Russian, and Hindi; the Sino-Tibetan family, which includes Mandarin Chinese, Cantonese, and many others; the Afro-Asiatic family, which includes Arabic, Amharic, Somali, and Hebrew; the Bantu languages, which include Swahili, Zulu, Shona, and hundreds of other languages spoken throughout Africa; and the Malayo-Polynesian languages, which include Indonesian, Malay, Tagalog, Malagasy, and hundreds of other languages spoken throughout the Pacific. Academic consensus holds that between 50% and 90% of

languages spoken at the beginning of the 21<sup>st</sup> century will probably have become extinct by the year 2100.

### **Post-reading Activities**

#### **1. Answer the following questions:**

1. What is a language?
2. What does a language allow people to do?
3. What is the origin of the word 'language'?
4. How is a language often called?
5. Is there language wherever there is human society?
6. What do most forms of human activity depend on?
7. What does a common language enable human beings to do?
8. Has language made possible the development of advanced, technological civilization?
9. How do they call scholars who study language?
10. How many languages are spoken in the world today?
11. Does this number include dialects?
12. What is a dialect?
13. Are many languages spoken only by small groups of a few hundred or a few thousand people?
14. What are the most widely spoken languages?

#### **2. Match the words listed below with the definitions that follow.**

antiquity, dialect, grammar, language, linguist, linguistics, meaning, pronunciation, sound, speaking, speech, text, variety, vocabulary, writing

1. The system of communication in speech and writing that is used by people of a particular country or area.
2. The scientific study of language.
3. The act of creating written works.
4. The activity of giving speeches and talks.
5. The way a word or a language is customarily spoken.
6. The total number of words you know in a particular language.
7. The branch of linguistics that deals with syntax and morphology.
8. The ability to speak or the act of speaking.
9. A specialist in linguistics.
10. The thing or idea that a sound, word, sign, etc. represents.

11. The main printed part of a book or magazine, not the notes, pictures, etc.
12. Several different sorts of the same thing.
13. A form of a language that is spoken in a particular area.
14. Something that you hear.
15. The ancient past, especially the times of the Greeks and Romans.

**3. How do you feel about the following sciences: culture studies, sociology, history, art history, philosophy, psychology. Use as many of these expressions as you want in your answer.**

I really enjoy...

I'm extremely interested in...

I'm fascinated by...

I'm quite interested in...

I'd like to know more about...

I don't know anything about...

I've always wanted to learn something about ...

I'm not very interested in...

I'm not in the least interested in...

I don't much like...

I don't like ... at all.

I'm bored by...

I hate...

I think ... is a complete waste of time.

I used to like ..., but I've lost interest in it.

I used to think ... was boring, but now I'm getting interested in it.

**4. Read the following quotations and choose one or more you like most of all. What do you think the authors mean by these statements? Use them in the situations of your own.**

1. Language is the dress of thought (Samuel Johnson, British lexicographer, poet, writer, and critic, 1709–1784).

2. The English language is like a woman's wardrobe – full of things she can't use, and yet the one thing she needs she can't find (Will Stanton).

3. Every quotation contributes something to the stability or enlargement of the language (Samuel Johnson).

4. Language is only the instrument of science, and words are but the signs of ideas. (Samuel Johnson)
5. The British and Americans are divided by a common language. (George Bernard Shaw)
6. The Americans are identical to the British in all respects except, of course, language. (Oscar Wilde)

**5. Make up short conversations using the following questions:**

- 1) How does language influence our perception of the world?
- 2) What images are in your mind when you hear the word 'English'?
- 3) Do other people in your family speak English?
- 4) How would you compare your native language with English?  
Does your language have words adopted from English?
- 5) What is your favourite word in English, and why?
- 6) Do you think English is more or less difficult than your language?
- 7) How can the English language help you advance in your career?
- 8) Should everyone learn English?
- 9) Why is English so important?
- 10) Is English important for an individual in your country?
- 11) How many languages do you speak?
- 12) What other languages would you like to learn?
- 13) Has English improved your life?
- 14) What are the things you like most and least about English?
- 15) Do you think English will completely dominate over all the other languages in the future?

**6. Study the following information:**

**A Using 'the'**

Most names of countries are used without 'the', but some countries and other names have 'the' before them, e.g. *The United States / US(A)*, *The United Kingdom / UK*, *The Netherlands*, *The Philippines*.

**B Suffixes of adjectives referring to countries and languages**

*-ish*: *British, Danish, Flemish, Irish, Polish, Spanish, Turkish*

*-(i)an*: *American, Australian, Belarusian, Canadian, Russian*

*-ese*: *Chinese, Japanese, Portuguese,, Vietnamese*



*-i: Iraqi, Israeli, Kuwaiti, Pakistani, Yemeni*

*-ic: Arabic, Icelandic, Slavonic*

Some adjectives are worth learning separately, e.g. *Cypriot, Dutch, Greek, Swiss, Thai*.

### **C Nationalities**

Some nationalities and cultural identities have nouns for referring to people, e.g. a Finn, a Swede, a Turk, a Spaniard, a Dane, a Briton, an Arab. In most cases we can use the adjective as a noun, e.g. a German, an Italian, a Belgian, a Catalan, a Greek, an African, a European. Some need woman/man/person added to them (you can't say 'a Dutch'), so if you have doubts, use them, e.g. a Dutch man, a French woman, an Irish person, an Icelandic man.

### **D People and races**

People belong to *ethnic groups* and *regional groups* such as *Afro-Caribbeans, Asians* and *Latin Americans*. What are you? (e.g. *North African, Southern African, European, Melanesian*)

They speak *dialects* as well as languages. Everyone has a *native language* or *first language*; many have second and third languages. Some people are expert in more than one language and are bilingual or multilingual.

## **ADDITIONAL READING ACTIVITIES**

### **ADDITIONAL READING 1**

**Read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, go on reading. If a line has a word which should not be there, cross out the word.**

#### **World English**

1. If we read English language newspapers or listen to newsreaders
2. who use English in all different parts of the world, we will quickly
3. develop the impression on that one form of English is so widely used

4. that it will soon unite all the different varieties of English which  
5. exist. Is there enough evidence to support for this impression?  
6. It is in real fact misleading in several ways since a version of  
7. English which is exactly the same in everywhere and has the  
8. same high status throughout the complete world does not yet  
exist.  
9. For one thing, people that whose first language is English value  
10. their linguistic identity. Therefore, they try to preserve it from  
the  
11. influence of other forms of English. New Zealanders, for an  
example,  
12. do not want to speak like Australians. In addition with, there  
13. are too very many regional differences in vocabulary for the  
14. language to be the same everywhere. People need specialised  
15. words in order to discuss each local politics, business, culture  
16. and natural history. Lastly, there is the fact that learners of  
17. English may be taught by either American or British forms.

## **ADDITIONAL READING 2**

**Give the following passage containing 150 words an appropriate title and summarise it in about 50 words.**

The first census of the United States, taken in 1790, showed that 90% of the four million inhabitants were descendants of English colonists. They, therefore, spoke the language of England, which takes its name from the Anglo-Saxons, who arrived in the Celtic-speaking British Isles from northern Europe between the 4<sup>th</sup> and 7<sup>th</sup> centuries A.D. The Anglo-Saxons spoke a Germanic language, which forms the basis for modern English. It was modified by the arrival of two other groups. Norse-speaking Vikings from Scandinavia came between the 8<sup>th</sup> and 11<sup>th</sup> centuries, and their Norse language, related to Anglo-Saxon, enriched English vocabulary. Then, in 1066, French-speaking Normans conquered England. For the next three hundred years three languages co-existed. The aristocracy spoke French, the ordinary people spoke English, while Latin was used in the Church. The English that came to the American colonies in the 17<sup>th</sup> century had evolved from the mingling of these three tongues.

**Give the following passage containing 293 words an appropriate title and summarise it in about 100 words.**

The United States has never had an official language, but English has always been the chief language spoken in the country. Immigrants from the British Isles – who included the nation’s founders – spoke English. Many immigrants from other lands who spoke little or no English also came to the United States. They learned at least enough English to be able to communicate with other Americans. Their children learned English in school. The immigrants’ children generally spoke both English and their ethnic language, and in many families the immigrants’ grandchildren spoke only English.

Today, Spanish is the second most common language in the United States. The region that is now the Southwestern United States was colonized by Spain in the 1500s. As a result, many people from that region speak Spanish. Since the 1950s, many Spanish-speaking people have immigrated to the United States from Mexico, Cuba, and other places. Many of these people learned English. But others speak only Spanish. This is especially true in Spanish-speaking neighborhoods that developed in cities. Some people feel that special efforts should be made to provide education and other services in Spanish for people who speak only Spanish.

Many people believe every American should know English. They point out that it is difficult to get a job outside Spanish-speaking neighborhoods if you don’t know English. They also argue that a language shared by everyone is an important unifying force for a country. In the 1980s and 1990s, a number of states passed laws declaring English to be their only official language. These laws provide that the government must offer its services in English, and need not do so in any other language. But in some places, public documents and signs are written in both English and Spanish.

### **ADDITIONAL READING 3**

**Read and translate the following text with the help of a dictionary:**

#### **Speech**

Speech has several definitions. It may mean the act of speaking, the forms of speech, the content of speech or what is spoken, the language of a nation or group of nations, or the dialect peculiar to a region or locality.

The act of speaking uses an audible code and a visible code to produce messages. The audible code consists of phonation, the creation of sound, and articulation, the shaping of sound into understandable language. The visible code consists of eye contact, facial expressions, hand gestures, and other types of body movement.

The forms of speech may be informal or formal. Informal speeches include conversation and storytelling. Formal speeches include lectures, debates, orations, dramas, and broadcasts. Speeches may inform, persuade, or entertain.

The content of speech includes what is spoken whether it is from memory, text, or impromptu (without preparation). A speech may contain a speaker's ideas or arguments, supporting evidence, emotional pleas, or remarks that attract an audience's attention, such as jokes.

Language is the different sounds made by people to communicate. Dialects are variations in pronunciation, word choice, or accent between groups of people who speak a common language.

The average child learns to speak by imitating other people. It is important that a child hears proper speech. Parents should note any speech difficulties, such as lispings or stuttering, in their children. If such difficulties occur, parents should take the child to a competent authority on speech problems. Speech clinics can offer helpful advice.

## **ADDITIONAL READING 4**

### **Journey to a Language Land**

The English language spread with the growth of the British empire, becoming the dominant language in Canada, the United States, New Zealand and Australia.

The growing global influence of the US has further increased the spread of English.

Today English is probably the most widely spoken language in the world, with many people learning it as a second or foreign language. It is estimated that there could be as many as 1.5 billion total English speakers worldwide.

With over 800 million native speakers, Chinese Mandarin is the most spoken native language, followed by Spanish and English.

The countries with the highest population of native English speakers are the US, UK, Canada and Australia.

English is one of six official languages of the United Nations, as well as French, Russian, Spanish, Arabic and Chinese Mandarin.

English has a huge vocabulary, with over 250,000 different words listed in the Oxford English dictionary.

No language has more synonyms than English does.

French was the official language of England for over 600 years.

English incorporates words from a large number of different languages. Many of these words have French, Old Norse or Dutch origin.

Many scientific words used in the English language come from Latin or Greek.

English is written in the Latin alphabet (also known as the Roman alphabet).

More than 375 million people use English as their first language.

More than 75% of world's mail and documents are typed in English.

English is the medium for 80% of the information stored in the world's computers.

All pilots on international flights identify themselves in English.

The most common letters in English are r s t l n e.

A dot over the letter "i" is called a tittle.

The sentence "the quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog" uses every letter in the alphabet.

“I am” is the shortest complete sentence in the English language.

The word “set” has more definitions than any other word in the English language.

The longest one-syllable word in the English language is “screeched”.

No word in the English language rhymes with month, orange, silver, and purple.

There is a seven-letter word in the English language that contains 10 words without rearranging any of its letters, “therein” – the, there, he, in, rein, her, here, ere, herein, therein.

“Stewardesses” is the longest word that is typed with only the left hand.

The word “goodbye” came and from the words “god bye” used in Old English which used to mean that “god be with you”.

# UNIT 3 University Education

---

## The Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts

---

### Vocabulary

educational establishment	dormitory
institution of higher education	curriculum (pl. curricula)
development	article
multi-level system of education	the stock of university library
Master's course	printed music
Postgraduate course	periodical
to graduate from	electronic edition
teaching staff	to be free of charge
lecture	folklore
lecturer	artistic group
tutor	art gallery
academic	honorary title
academic degree	contribution
the foundation of the University	significantly
faculty	course
existence	abroad
to be ready to do smth.	research
to get ready for smth.	researcher
science	credit
	to get a credit for a course

### Pre-reading Activities

#### 1. Study the pronunciation of the following words:

sphere, extended, culture, devote, preservation, originally, structure, decade, faculty, document, social, specialist, cover, foreign languages, honorary title, science, library, literature, edition, excursion, popularizing, abroad, concert, competition, mission, favorable

**2. Make sure you know the Russian equivalents for the following words and expressions:**

- |                        |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. rebirth             | a. ГОТОВИТЬСЯ     |
| 2. significantly       | b. ИНТЕРЕСОВАТЬСЯ |
| 3. existence           | c. СОЗДАВАТЬ      |
| 4. contribution        | d. ПРИЗНАНИЕ      |
| 5. recognition         | e. ВОЗРОЖДЕНИЕ    |
| 6. to consist of       | f. ОБЕСПЕЧИВАТЬ   |
| 7. to be interested in | g. ПОЗВОЛЯТЬ      |
| 8. to get ready for    | h. СОСТОЯТЬ ИЗ    |
| 9. necessary           | i. НЕОБХОДИМЫЙ    |
| 10. to provide         | j. СУЩЕСТВОВАНИЕ  |
| 11. to allow           | k. ВКЛАД          |
| 12. to create          | l. ЗНАЧИТЕЛЬНО    |

**3. Find the pairs of words with the close meaning:**

to study, to promote, institution, to maintain, to train, patron, to graduate from, establishment, user, to popularize, sphere, to teach, contest, to publish, comfortable, to cover, to finish, to be set up, field, to print, to include, to be founded, cosy, competition, to support, to learn

**Reading Activities**

**1. Read the text and get ready to speak on the topic “The Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts”:**

**THE BELARUSIAN STATE UNIVERSITY  
OF CULTURE AND ARTS**

The educational establishment “The Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts” is the leading institution of higher education in the sphere of culture in Belarus. The University keeps its doors open to all those who are interested in Belarusian national culture and art, to those who are ready to devote their lives to rebirth, preservation and development of Belarusian national culture.

The Minsk Institute of Culture was set up in September, 1975, and originally it had two faculties. The structure of the Belarusian



State University of Culture and Arts has changed significantly during four decades. Today it consists of 4 faculties:

- The Faculty of Cultural Studies and Socio-Cultural Activity;
- The Faculty of Information and Document Communications;
- The Faculty of Artistic Culture;
- The Faculty of Music and Choreographic Art.

Nowadays the University has a multi-level system of education: College – University – Master’s course – Postgraduate course – Doctorate. About 3,000 students and 400 Master students get education at the departments of the University. The curricula of all faculties cover such subjects as “National History”, “History of National Culture”, “History of Belarusian Art”, “Belarusian Language and Literature”, “Foreign Languages”, “Ethnography”, “Philosophy” and others. Students from Russia, China, Latvia, Ukraine, Kazakhstan and other countries are trained here. More than 30,000 young specialists have already graduated from the University.

The teaching staff includes lecturers who have academic degrees and honorary titles. During the years of its existence the university lecturers have made a great contribution to the development of Belarusian science. Since the foundation of the University a lot of articles, monographs, course books and textbooks have been published here. In 1989, a postgraduate course was established.

The international recognition of the University is expressed in maintaining contacts with more than 120 institutions of higher education in Russia, Ukraine, China, Italy, France, Sweden, Bulgaria and other countries of the world.

The University has a good library and a comfortable reading room where students can borrow necessary textbooks and other literature and get ready for lectures. The stock of university library numbers about 2,000,000 books, documents, printed music, periodicals, and electronic editions in Belarusian, Russian, English, German, French, Spanish and other languages. The library is free of charge for all the patrons.

The departments of the University promote Belarusian folklore and traditions. At the University there are more than 30 artistic groups well-known in our country and abroad. Our students take an active part in the social life of the University. They organize

concerts, festivals, contests, meetings, excursions and sport competitions.

The University has its own art gallery. The main mission of the gallery is to create favorable conditions for the development of artistic potential of students as well as young talented artists.

### **Post-reading Activities**

#### **1. Complete the following sentences:**

1. The Minsk Institute of Culture was set up in ... .
2. The Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts ... significantly during four decades.
3. ... of all faculties ... a lot of different subjects.
4. More than 30,000 young specialists ... from the University.
5. The teaching ... includes lecturers who have ... degrees and ... titles.
6. Since the foundation of the University a lot of ... have been published here.
7. The students can ... necessary textbooks from ... .
8. Our students ... in the social life of the University.

#### **2. Find in the text the English equivalents for the following Russian words and word combinations:**

искусство, почетные звания, интересоваться, посвятить, состоять из, культурология, традиционный, современный, хорошо известный, учебный план, учебный предмет, лектор, преподавать, основание университета, статья, учебник, лекция, фольклор, фонд библиотеки, заканчивать высшее учебное заведение, благоприятные условия для развития, научные степени

#### **3. Answer the questions:**

- 1) Is the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts one of the leading in the sphere of culture in our country?
- 2) Can you name the faculties of our University?
- 3) What multi-level system of education does our University have?
- 4) What subjects do the curricula of all specializations cover?
- 5) Does the University maintain contacts with institutions of higher education in other countries? What are these countries?
- 6) What is the stock of university library?

- 7) What kind of editions can the students borrow from the library?  
8) Can you prove that students' life at our University is interesting?

**4. Translate into English the names of the subjects from your timetable and be ready to speak about your favourite one.**

**5. Work in pairs. Imagine that a student of our University is giving an interview to a foreign journalist.**

# Students' Life

---

## Vocabulary

to attend an educational institution	to investigate
knowledge	household duties
opportunity	to go to the University by bus (trolley-bus, tram, underground, on foot)
to pass entrance examinations	to take off (someone's clothes)
to be admitted to	timetable
first-year student	to take notes
dormitory	out-of-class (extracurricular) activities
to share (a room, a flat, etc.)	to arrange meetings
to wake up	to be involved in
to air	volunteer work
morning exercises	future career
to restore an optimistic approach to life	alarm clock
to make up one's mind	non-stressful
according to	

## Pre-reading Activities:

### 1. Practice saying the following words:

successfully, early, shower, perfectly, seminar, disappointing, nowadays, atmosphere, desire, discover, horizon, excellent, canteen, type, typical, enjoyable, socializing, cloak-room, socially, non-stressful, lecture, lecturer, seminar, credit, avoid, effort, impressive, through, gym, musician, celebrities, tutor, surfing, informative, skillfully

### 2. Study the meaning of the following words:

- Глагол *to learn* означает:

1) учить факты, слова, числа (часто наизусть) с целью усвоить определенные знания:

*My son learns English at school.*

*She has learnt the poem by heart.*

2) получать практические навыки:

*Mary has never learnt to ski to this day.*

3) узнавать что-то новое на основе вновь поступившей информации или наблюдений.

*I learned that they had eaten already.*

• Глагол *to study* имеет следующие смысловые оттенки:

1) изучать что-либо путем чтения, занятий для получения теоретических навыков. Например, изучать какую-либо отрасль науки с целью стать специалистом в этой области:

*Peter wants to study physics.*

2) получать академические знания в образовательном учреждении.

*He studied at the Kensington School of Art.*

Обратите внимание, что русское предложение: «Он учится хорошо в школе/институте» — переводятся на английский язык:

*He is doing well at school/at the university.*

• Глагол *to teach* имеет значение — обучать кого-либо, сообщая знания; преподавать:

*My cousin Lidia teaches History at school.*

○ **Fill in study or learn in their forms:**

1. What's the best way to ... a language?

2. Anna ... French literature.

3. She is surprised to ... that he is a lot older than she thought.

4. Today we ... how to use the new software.

5. My brother ... at the Royal College of Art.

6. We have to ... one of Hamlet's speeches for school tomorrow.

7. I want time to ... this contract thoroughly before signing it.

8. I don't know how actors manage to ... all those lines.

9. Their children want to ... English.

10. He is ... to play the piano.

○ **Make example sentences using the words you have studied.**

## Reading Activities

**1. Read the text and get ready to speak on the topic "Students' Life":**

### STUDENTS' LIFE

In the English language the word "student" means anyone who is learning, or someone who attends an educational institution. I

understand perfectly well that knowledge is socially demanded and needed nowadays. Higher education gives us more opportunities for our future career.

Last summer I made up my mind to become a student of the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts. I passed my entrance examinations successfully and was admitted to the University. Now I am a first-year student, or a fresher. My dream has come true.

I live in a student dormitory (at home). (I rent a flat). I share my room with two other students. My working day begins early. The alarm clock wakes me up at 6.30. I open the window to air the room, and make my bed. Morning exercises and a quick shower, tasty breakfast and a cup of fresh coffee help me to wake up and restore an optimistic approach to life.

My typical day doesn't differ much from that of any other student in our country: lectures, exams, household duties, pastime, clubs, friends, etc. As a rule I go to the University by bus (trolley-bus, tram, underground, on foot). It takes me 30 minutes to get there. I come to the University a few minutes before 8. I take off my coat and leave it in the cloak-room. Then I go to the time-table to see in what classroom we will have our lectures and seminars.

According to our timetable we have three classes every day. As usual our studies are interesting and informative, never boring or disappointing. The classroom atmosphere is usually friendly and enjoyable, stimulating and non-stressful. Our lecturers and tutors are real professionals who skillfully stimulate our desire to know, to investigate, to learn new things, and discover new horizons.

Good education means a good start in life, that is why I try to do my best and learn a lot during the university years. I try to take notes of every lecture which contains useful and interesting information, work hard at the seminars, get good and excellent marks. Of course I have some problems from time to time. But I understand that the best way to avoid such problems is to plan the time and to organize the work.

Before or after classes, as well as during the breaks I have a chance to listen to music, go to the library, have a snack at the canteen, or have a chat with my group mates about sport news, cultural and political events.

When my classes are over I stay at the University to take part in some out-of-class activities or go home to have a meal and to rest. From 5 till 8 I usually get ready for my classes. In the evening when I am through with my lessons I like reading, watching TV, dancing, surfing the Internet, going out with my friends or just doing nothing. I go to bed at about 11 p.m.

This is a typical day of mine. Of course, my studies take a lot of time and effort, but I try to make my student life more impressive and enjoyable by taking part in extracurricular activities. At the University we have the opportunity to go in for different sports: skiing, jogging, playing chess, football, volleyball, training at the gym, and others. I adore socializing with my friends: going to the cinemas and theatres, dancing at night clubs and singing karaoke. We usually have merry parties at Halloween, Christmas, New Year, and especially on International Students' Day on November, 17. It is a good tradition at our University to arrange meetings with famous artists, actors, musicians, stage directors and other celebrities. Our students are actively involved in volunteer work.

### **Post-reading Activities**

#### **1. Match the words to make up the phrases according to the text:**

- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. an approach | a) work         |
| 2. tasty       | b) education    |
| 3. to discover | c) clock        |
| 4. to avoid    | d) one's mind   |
| 5. to come     | e) new horizons |
| 6. to make up  | f) problems     |
| 7. to arrange  | g) true         |
| 8. alarm       | h) breakfast    |
| 9. volunteer   | i) meetings     |
| 10. higher     | j) to life      |

#### **2. Put the appropriate word or phrase in the spaces below:**

differ, our classes, the best way, the cloak-room, successfully, a fresher, knowledge, discover, other, our desire

1. ... is socially demanded and needed nowadays.
2. I passed my entrance examinations ... .

3. I am a first-year student, or ... .
4. My typical day doesn't ... much from that of any ... student in our country.
5. As usual ... are interesting and informative.
6. Our lecturers skillfully stimulate ... to know, to investigate, to learn new things and ... new horizons.
7. I leave my coat in ... .
8. ... to avoid problems while studying is to plan the time.

**3. Make example sentences using the following words and phrases:**

- It's my firm belief
- to make up one's mind to do smth.
- to do one's best
- to pass entrance exams
- to fail exams
- to avoid
- household duties
- alarm-clock
- to work hard
- to have a chance

**4. Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What does the English word "student" mean?
- 2) Did you pass your entrance examinations successfully?
- 3) Do you live in a student dormitory or at home?
- 4) When does your working day begin?
- 5) How do you get to the University?
- 6) How long does it take you?
- 7) What information can you get from your timetable?
- 8) Do you take part in any out-of-class activities?
- 9) What time do you come home after your studies?
- 10) Do you go to bed early?
- 11) Which holidays are mentioned in the text?
- 12) What activities does a typical day of a student include?
- 13) What does higher education give you?

**5. Speak on the advantages and disadvantages of being a student.**



## ADDITIONAL READING ACTIVITIES

### ADDITIONAL READING 1

**Read the text and be ready to compare the Belarusian higher education with the British one:**

#### **Studying at (a British) University**

If you want **to go to (=enter) university**, you must first **pass examinations** that most students take at the age of eighteen (called 'A' levels). Most students take three 'A' levels (three examinations in three different **subjects**) and they must do well in order to get/obtain a place at university because the places are limited. At the moment, approximately 30 % of young adults go to university in Britain.

If you get a place at university, **the tuition** (=the teaching) is not always free. Some students also **get (=receive) a grant** (=money to pay for living expenses, e.g. food and accommodation) as well. Students at university are called **undergraduates** while they are studying for their first **degree**.

Most university courses last (=go on for/continue for) three years, some courses last four years, and one or two courses, e.g. medicine, may be even longer. During this period students can say that they are doing/studying history, or doing/studying for a degree in history, for example. When they finish **the course** and pass their examinations, they receive a degree (the qualification when you complete a university course successfully). This can be a BA (=Bachelor of Arts) or a BSc (=Bachelor of Science), e.g. I have a friend who has a BA in history, and another who has a BSc in chemistry.

When you complete your first degree, you are **a graduate**. (In the US, students also use this word as a verb and say, they 'graduated in history' or 'graduated in chemistry', for example). Some students then go on to do a second course or degree (**postgraduate course / postgraduate degree**). These students are postgraduates and they often study for:

an MA (Master of Arts) or an MSc (Master of Science); usually one year

a PhD (Doctor of Philosophy); at least three years.

Sometimes scholars want to continue their research after the completion of doctoral degree. In this case we say that they do **postdoctoral research**.

**1. Answer the following questions:**

- 1) How many young adults go to universities in Great Britain?
- 2) Are the students in Great Britain called undergraduates while they are studying for their first degree?
- 3) How long do most university courses last?
- 4) What do the students receive when they finish the course and pass their examinations?

**2. Make up your own sentences using the words in bold.**

**ADDITIONAL READING 2**

**Go through the text and give a brief summary of the reading according to your plan. Memorize the indicated words and use them in your summary:**

**Higher Education in the United Kingdom**

The British higher educational system includes universities, colleges of higher education and advanced courses of further **education**. There are about 90 universities and 47 colleges of higher education in the United Kingdom. All British Universities are **independent institutions**. It means that they are autonomous, but they all receive **financial support** from the state.

Most UK universities fall into one or more of seven categories:

- Ancient universities – the six universities founded before 1800;
- Universities chartered in the 19<sup>th</sup> century – London University, Durham University, and the University of Wales;
- Red Brick Universities – large civic universities chartered at the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> – the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century before World War II;
- Plate Glass universities – universities chartered after 1966 (formerly described as the “new universities”);

- The Open University – the UK’s “open to all” distance learning university established in 1968;
- New Universities – post-1992 universities formed from Polytechnics or Colleges of Higher Education;
- Russell Group – association of 24 public research universities.

The ancient universities are: the University of Oxford (1096) and the University of Cambridge (1209) in England, the University of St Andrews (1413), the University of Glasgow (1451), the University of Aberdeen (1495), and the University of Edinburgh (1582) in Scotland.

Oxford and Cambridge Universities were founded in the Middle Ages. So they are the oldest, the most **prestigious** and privileged universities in the UK. Many **prominent** men and members of the Royal family were educated there. Today Oxbridge (as the two together are known) educates less than 1/10<sup>th</sup> of Britain’s total student university population. Both universities grew gradually, as federations of **independent** colleges most of which were founded in the 14<sup>th</sup>, 15<sup>th</sup> and 16<sup>th</sup> centuries. Each **college** has its own name, **symbols and traditions**. For centuries Oxbridge Universities were only for men. Nowadays almost all colleges are mixed. Oxbridge Universities are known for their specific system of education, called the **tutorial system**. It means that each student has a **tutor**, who directs the student’s work, gives **personal instructions** and keeps an eye on his progress. Every week the tutor and his student meet to discuss the work they have done, to criticize it in details and to set the next week’s work. These weekly meetings are called tutorials.

The University of London was founded in 1836 as an examining and degree-giving body. Teaching functions were added in 1898. It comprised at first University College and King’s College. It is now a large aggregation of schools, colleges, institutes, and hospitals, including the Royal Academy of Music, the London School of Economics and Political Science, etc.

“Red Brick University” is a term originally used to refer to six civic universities founded in the major industrial cities of England (Birmingham, Manchester, Leeds, Sheffield, Bristol, Liverpool). Red Brick universities were founded as a respond to the great demand for educated people. These institutions served the needs of their cities and the area around them. They were based on the **mass lecture system**.

The term “Plate Glass university” refers to a group of universities set up in the United Kingdom during the mid-20<sup>th</sup> century.

The most revolutionary development in university education was the **establishment** of the Open University. It was formed on the initiative of the leader of the Labor Party, Harold Wilson, in 1968. The Open University **provides** every person in Britain with the **opportunity** to study for a degree without leaving their home.

The Russell Group is an association of 24 public research universities, headquartered in London. It was established in 1994 to represent its members' interests to government and Parliament.

The **admission** to the Universities is by **examinations** or selection (**interviews**). It looks like that: two or three months before leaving school, **applicants** fill in the form, putting down the name of 5 Universities in the order of preference. The copies of the form are sent to the Universities for examining and discussing the **achievements** of the school-leavers during school years by the authorities. The results of **out-of-school activities** and the references of teachers and school headmasters are taken into account. The final decision depends on the A-level results. On the basis of all this, applicants are sent a rejection or an offer. In their turn, **applicants** must accept or refuse the offer within 72 hours. Sometimes applicants get offers from several universities and they may choose. However, nowadays one half of universities have lost confidence in the grades that are awarded by secondary schools, and require many applicants to sit for a competitive entrance examination.

## **Post-reading Activities**

### **1. Answer the following questions:**

1. What types of educational establishments does the British higher educational system include?
2. How many universities are there in the United Kingdom?
3. All British Universities are independent institutions, aren't they?
4. When were Oxford and Cambridge founded?
5. Is it true that many prominent men and members of the Royal family were educated in Oxbridge?
6. Oxbridge Universities are only for men, aren't they?
7. What are the tutor's duties?

8. How often do the tutor and his student meet?
9. When were Redbrick Universities founded? What was the purpose of their foundation?
10. Who helped to establish the Open University?
11. When was it set up?
12. Is the admission to the British universities the same as in our country?

## **2. Make the reports about each category of British universities.**

### **ADDITIONAL READING 3**

**Read the following text and get ready to speak about the peculiar features of the education at Oxbridge:**

#### **Oxbridge**

Oxford and Cambridge are the oldest and most prestigious universities in Great Britain. They are often called collectively Oxbridge to denote an elitarian education. Both universities are independent, only very rich and aristocratic families can afford to send their sons and daughters to these universities. Mostly they are former public schools leavers. The tutorial is the basic model of instruction at Oxford and Cambridge, with lectures as optional extras.

The normal length of the degree course is three years, after which the students take the Degree of Bachelor of Arts (BA). Some courses, such as languages or medicine, may be one or two years longer. The students may work for other degrees as well. The degrees are awarded at public degree ceremonies. Oxford and Cambridge cling to their traditions, such as the use of Latin at degree ceremonies. Full academic dress is worn at examinations.

Oxford and Cambridge universities consist of a number of colleges. Each college is different, but in many ways they are alike. Each college has its name, its coat of arms. Each college is governed by a Master. The larger ones have more than 400 members; the smallest colleges have less than 30 students. Each college offers teaching in a wide range of subjects. Within the college one will normally find a chapel, a dining hall, a library,

rooms for undergraduates, fellows and the Master, and also rooms for teaching purposes.

Oxford is the second largest university in Britain, after London University. The town of Oxford was first mentioned in the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle in 911 A.D and it was popular with the early English kings (Richard the Lion heart was probably here). While having no known date of foundation, there is evidence of teaching as far back as 1096, making it the oldest university in the English-speaking world. It grew rapidly from 1167 when Henry II banned English students from attending the University of Paris. The university's earliest charter is dated back to 1213.

There are now twenty-four colleges for men, five for women, and other five which have both men and women members, many from overseas studying for higher degrees. Among the oldest colleges are University College, All Souls and Christ Church.

Cambridge University started during the 13<sup>th</sup> century. In 1209, scholars taking refuge from hostile townsmen in Oxford migrated to Cambridge and settled there. By 1226 the scholars were numerous enough to have set up an organisation, represented by an official called a Chancellor, and arranged regular courses of study, taught by their own members. Now Cambridge University has more than 30 colleges, and also includes the Cavendish Laboratory, King's College Chapel, and the Cambridge University Library.

On the river of the Cam willow trees weep their branches into the water. The colleges line the right bank. There are beautiful college gardens with green lawns and lines of tall trees. The oldest college is Peterhouse, which was founded in 1284, and the most recent is Robinson College, which was opened in 1977. The most famous is probably King's College because of its magnificent chapel, the largest and the beautiful building in Cambridge and the most perfect example left of English 15<sup>th</sup>-century architecture. Its choir of boys and undergraduates is also well known.

The university was only for men until 1871, when the first women's college was opened. In the 1970s, most colleges opened their doors to both men and women. Almost all colleges are now mixed.

Both Oxford and Cambridge universities have over a hundred societies and clubs, enough for every interest one could imagine. Sport takes an important part of students' life at Oxbridge.

## **Post-reading Activities**

### **1. Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What interesting facts about Oxford and Cambridge have you learnt from the text?
- 2) When was the town of Oxford first mentioned?
- 3) Is Oxford a university for men or for women?
- 4) When was Cambridge University opened?
- 5) What is the oldest college in Cambridge?
- 6) Are Cambridge colleges mixed now?

## **ADDITIONAL READING 4**

### **Students' Life at Oxford**

What is it like, being a student at Oxford? Students are selected on the basis of their results in the national examinations or the special Oxford entrance examination. There are many applicants, and nobody can get a place by paying a fee. Successful candidates are admitted to a specified college of the university: that will be their home for the next three years (the normal period for an undergraduate degree), and for longer if they are admitted to study for a postgraduate degree. They will be mostly taught by tutors from their own college.

Teaching is pleasantly informal and personal; a typical undergraduate (apart from those in the natural sciences who spend all day in the laboratories) will spend an hour a week with his or her 'tutor', perhaps in the company of one other student. Each of them will have to write an essay for the tutor, which serves as the basis for discussion, argument, the exposition of ideas and academic methods. At the end of the hour the students go away with a new essay title and a list of books that might be helpful in preparing for the essay.

Other kinds of teaching such as lectures and seminars are normally optional: popular lecturers can attract audiences from several faculties, while others may find themselves speaking to two or three loyal students or maybe to none at all. So, in theory, if you are good at reading, thinking and writing quickly, you can spend five days out of seven being idle: sleeping, taking part in sports, in student clubs, in acting and singing, in arguing, drinking, having parties. In practice, most students of Oxford are enthusiastic about the academic life, and many of the more conscientious ones work

for days at each essay, sometime sitting up through the night with a wet towel round their heads.

At the end of three years, all students face a dreadful ordeal, “Finals”, the final examinations. The victims are obliged to dress up for the occasion in black and white, an old-fashioned ritual that may help to calm the nerves. They crowd into the huge, bleak examination building and sit for three hours writing what they hope is beautiful prose on half-remembered or strangely forgotten subjects. In the afternoon they assemble for another three hours of writing. After four or five days of this torture they emerge, blinking into the sunlight, and stagger off for the biggest party of them all.

Postgraduates (often just called graduates) are mostly busy with research for their theses, and they spend days in their college libraries or in the richly endowed, 400-year-old Bodleian library.

### **Answer the following questions:**

1. Is Oxford a state university or a private one?
2. There are many applicants at Oxford University, aren't there?
3. What is the period of study for undergraduate students?
4. Who teaches students at Oxford?
5. Is teaching pleasantly informal and personal?
6. What serves as the basis for discussion, argument, the exposition of ideas and academic methods?
7. What can you say about other kinds of teaching such as lectures and seminars?
8. Are most students at Oxford enthusiastic about the academic life?
9. When do all students face the final examinations?
10. Postgraduates are mostly busy with research for their theses, aren't they?

### **ADDITIONAL READING 5**

**Read the following text and make up your own questions. Work in pairs and ask your questions to your partner:**

#### **The Open University**

A university which calls itself “the Open University” suggests that all other universities are closed. And this is true because they are closed to everyone who does not have the time, the opportunity



or the qualifications to study there. For these people who missed the chance of going to a conventional university, “the Open University” was set up by the Prime Minister Harold Wilson in 1968. Since its foundation, the Open University has opened up educational opportunities for at least two million students. It has inspired similar distance education institutions in many other countries and won a worldwide reputation for its pioneering methods of distance education.

As the University is truly “open”, there are no formal entry requirements, and students are accepted on a “first come, first served” basis. The Open University offers a second chance to thousands of people who didn’t have the opportunity to go on to the higher education in the past. For them, part-time study based at home, opens a whole new world of learning.

Students are of all ages and come from very different backgrounds. Some, such as teachers, want to improve their qualifications. Others, like retired people or mothers whose families have grown up, are at the Open University because they now have the time to do something they always wanted to do. Today half of all students of the Open University are women and many of them use it as part of a planned career break.

To keep people from just giving up or collapsing under all of this work, each student gets the help and the support of their own tutor counselor. They meet regularly and a student can telephone his counselor in any crisis or difficulty. At the meetings students get to know other students on the course and join each other into “self-help” groups. These groups meet in students’ homes to discuss texts and assignments.

Since the beginning the Open University has been in partnership with the British Broadcasting Corporation (BBC). Besides reading and writing assignments, students have got a lot of watching and listening to do, for there are weekly lectures broadcast on BBC television and radio.

By the time the exams come in October students feel much more confident and optimistic about their return to student life. Their final mark is based on the exam and the written assignments done during the year. If they pass, they have got one credit towards the six that they need for a degree at the usual rate of a course a year. It will take them six (or eight) years to get their degrees.

The cost of education is not cheap. The students have to pay more than J2,000 because the government's grant to the Open University does not cover the entire 160 million a year operating budget.

A university official said: "From the beginning the university's motto was "Open to people, open to places and open to ideas". Now it could be added, it is also "open to the world". New technology provides quick and easy access to libraries – whole libraries are available on discs. Homework is sent in direct from computer to computer, providing faster and better teaching. Similarly satellite transmission offers real opportunities when you think of the mission of the Open University in a global context".

**Discuss:**

1. Say what you have learnt about the Open University in Britain.
2. Compare the education at the Open University in Britain and the Faculty of Part-time Education at our University.
3. Share your views on advantages and disadvantages of distance learning.

**ADDITIONAL READING 6**

**Read the following text and retell it according to your own plan:**

**Harvard University**

Harvard University, founded in 1636, is the oldest university in the USA. The level of its teaching standards and scientific research is doubtless.

It would take an entire magazine's space only to list all the famous alumni and their achievements. But there are two of them who are particularly interesting for us. Their stories are very similar; they were accepted into Harvard, then came up with a kind of innovative and unbelievable idea, and finally dropped out of the University. Their names are William Henry Gates and Mark Zuckerberg. The first one invented Windows and is now one of the richest people in the world; the second one created Facebook. It is fascinating to see how these two students have changed the world.

I don't know whether someone can explain this immense success of Harvard students. It is difficult to believe that this is simply a

coincidence; there should be something else that influences young minds. Probably it all began in 1620, when the *Mayflower* arrived in the unknown land, which later on would be called the United States of America. The entrepreneurial ambition and belief in a new life influenced every single aspect of people's lives. I reckon that there are a few critical issues at Harvard: atmosphere, teaching standard, size of classes, individual work and, the most important, the desire to study. In Harvard, students want to explore and to learn, and are always motivated by its brilliant teaching staff. It is a different philosophy, which aims to see something special in each student rather than simply produce office clerks.

This summer, I was privileged to do an on-line course at Harvard University. It didn't require anything specific in the application process, simply IELTS results and some other relevant education information. The crucial thing is the organization of the overall educational process. Many students from different parts of the world want to listen to the lectures. To satisfy their desire, all the lectures are recorded and then uploaded on a special webpage. And to make life even easier, the videos are divided into logical segments, so that it doesn't take too much time to find the required part. You would probably be interested to know how the given assignments are marked. In the era of the Internet, this shouldn't be a problem. You can do homework in Microsoft Word and insert drawings if necessary, or write by hand on paper and then scan it. I was personally surprised at the level of organization. In the first few days, I received e-mails explaining the whole process of submitting assignments, deadlines, contacts of people who are in charge of different segments, etc. This very well-structured system actually motivates one to study and do everything in time. When you know that late homework is not accepted, you are more likely to do it in time, especially considering that each mark influences your final mark

**Answer the following questions:**

1. When was Harvard University founded?
2. Harvard is one of the best universities in the USA, isn't it?
3. Was Facebook created by Mark Zuckerberg or William Henry Gates?
4. What are the critical issues at Harvard?

5. In Harvard students want to explore and to learn, don't they?
6. Do many students from different parts in the world want to listen to the lectures in Harvard?
7. What program helps students to their homework?

## **ADDITIONAL READING 7**

**Translate the text in written form:**

### **The Library of the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts**

The library at our university was set up in 1975 with the foundation of the Minsk Institute of Culture. The formation of the library stock began with the editions transferred from the library of Minsk Teacher Training College, as well as other large libraries of our country.

The library is one of the most important structural divisions of the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts.

The collection of printed and electronic editions comprises over 500 thousand units. There are national and foreign documents, including printed music and periodicals in the Belarusian, Russian, English, German, Polish, and other languages.

The library has more than two thousand antique books and rare printed editions. The documents, donated from private collections of well-known cultural figures of Belarus, are stored in its fund. An archive of historical photographs connected with the university history has been created.

The library offers a subscription service, which provides access to more than one million on-line full-text resources.

Nowadays, the library is a modern multipurpose information center that ensures the support of research and educational processes of the university, as well as the development of informational and cultural background of its users. For this purpose, the library has created a large material and technical base.

The automated workplaces have been organized, and free access to the Internet resources, including Wi-Fi, is provided for the library users.

MARK-SQL, an automated library and information system, was introduced and in 2008 an electronic library catalogue became

available to the users on the basis of ALIS through the library website.

The information resources such as “The Works of the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts” and “The Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts in Mass Media Databases” (The Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts Repository) were created, and received the state registration.

The library comprises three functional departments, two lending departments, a general reading room, a scientific reading room and several specialized halls: a hall of rare books and documents, a hall with access to electronic information resources. Information and bibliographic services are also available to all users.

More than 16,000 users are served annually and over 600,000 documents are lent.

The staff carries on the traditions of educational work such as book presentations, meetings with well-known personalities of Belarusian literature and art, thematic exhibitions and literature reviews, exhibitions of works of art, etc.

Today the main tasks of the library are to improve the quality of the document fund as an information resource, to provide support for educational and research process, to introduce new information technologies into library work, to create comfortable work conditions and offer a full range of library services.

## **Write a composition about your visiting the University library. ADDITIONAL TASK**

### *Quiz*

What kind of student are you?

Answer the quiz to find out! *For each question, choose the option which you feel most describes you. Work out your score and read the definition of your student type then.*

1. Your teacher has given you a long assignment as homework. It has to be handed in next week. Do you...
  - a. get down to it straight away?
  - b. put it off for a couple of days so you have a chance to think it over?
  - c. check your diary? You can't always fit homework into your busy social life.

2. You think one of your classmates is cheating in an exam. Do you...
  - a. tell on him or her? It's not fair – you had to work hard.
  - b. get on with your own exam? You need to concentrate.
  - c. get back to doodling on your exam paper? Who cares?
3. You've been ill and have missed a number of English classes. Do you...
  - a. ask a classmate or the teacher to go over the important things you have missed with you?
  - b. worry about it and feel ill again?
  - c. just carry on – you will pick up anything important as you go along?
4. You've been invited away for a week. It will mean missing a number of your English classes. Do you...
  - a. turn down the invitation? You don't want to get behind.
  - b. jump at the chance? You can always make up for it later.
  - c. think carefully about the pros and cons before deciding one way or another?
5. You have difficulty learning new vocabulary. Do you...
  - a. decide to take up an easier language?
  - b. put together a personalized vocabulary book in which you can jot down meanings, example sentences and other useful information?
  - c. regularly draw up lists of new words translations in your own language?
6. You come across a new word in a text you are reading. Do you...
  - a. try to work out the meaning from the context and then check in the dictionary if necessary?
  - b. keep on reading, you're not taking much in anyway?
  - c. look it up straight away?
7. You're thinking of going for a monolingual learner's dictionary. Do you...
  - a. think about it but never actually get around to buying one?
  - b. put it to your teacher and see what he or she recommends?

- c. go straight out and buy one – presumably they're all the same?
8. You'd like to go on an intensive English course. How do you set about finding the most suitable one? Do you...
- a. plump for the one your friend did?
- b. contact your nearest British Council office and pore over the various options?
- c. sort out exactly what you want and can afford and then ask your teacher, family, or friends for advice?

*Key:* 1 - a3 b2 c1    2 - a3 b2 c1    3 - a2 b3 c1    4 - a3 b1 c2    5 - a1 b2 c3    6 - a2 b3 c1    7 - a2 b3 c1    8 - a1 b2 c2

*Score:* 20 - 24 – Be warned – all work and no play isn't good for you! You need to relax a bit more, go for a walk, phone a friend, or have an evening off. Studying when you are tired or stressed can be unproductive in the long run.

14–20 – You seem to have a well-balanced approach to your studies. You work hard without letting your studies take over your life. Keep up the good work!

Under 14 – Studying seems to come rather low on your list of priorities! Try setting aside some regular time for work – you might even find you enjoy it!

# UNIT 4 Mass Media

---

## Vocabulary

mass medium (-a)	to meet the demand
feature	on the one hand/on the other hand
to play an important role	global network
society (modern society)	to enmesh
to educate	opportunity
to entertain	to include
to influence	invention
view, viewpoint	affair
to shape	current affairs
to subscribe to	home affairs
to contain	international affairs
to cover events	to gather big audience
to distinguish	analysis

## Pre-reading Activities

### 1. Match the English words and word combinations with their Russian equivalents:

1. important feature	a. мировое сообщество
2. global community	b. заставлять кого-либо менять свое мнение
3. the way people look at the world	c. национальная еженедельная газета
4. to make someone change the view	d. обзор книг
5. to shape public opinion	e. давать темы для беседы
6. national weekly newspaper	f. важная черта
7. articles on home affairs	g. формировать общественное мнение
8. review of books	h. освещать спортивные события
9. to cover sport events	i. то, как люди смотрят на мир
10. to provide topics for conversation	j. статьи о событиях в стране



## **2. Find the English equivalents in the text:**

люди объединены в одно мировое сообщество; узнать, что происходит в мире; информировать, обучать и развлекать людей; влиять на то, как люди смотрят на мир; представить нашу жизнь без газет; раньше люди различали; большая часть рынка; отечественная или зарубежная музыка; ресурс, который успешно выместил все другие средства

## **3. Make sentences with the following words:**

civilization, with the help of, a newspaper, demanding taste, to turn on the computer.

### **Reading Activities**

**Read the text and get ready to speak on the topic “Mass media in our life”:**

#### **Mass Media in Our Life**

Mass media are one of the most important features of modern civilization. People are united into one global community with the help of mass media. People can learn about what is happening in the world very fast using mass media. Mass media include newspapers, magazines, radio, television and the Internet. They play an important role in the life of society. They inform, educate and entertain people. They also influence the way people look at the world and make them change their views. Mass media shape public opinion.

People in their spare time read newspapers. It is impossible to imagine our life without newspapers. Millions of copies of them appear every day. Many people subscribe to two or more newspapers, others buy newspapers on the news-stands.

Most newspapers contain news, detailed articles on home and international affairs, reviews of books and TV-shows. Many of them cover sport events. People used to distinguish between “quality” papers and “yellow” press. Now the yellow press has occupied the major part of the market. People get what they are interested in. And the task of industry is just to produce it and meet the demand.

Radio is especially popular with drivers, and is not for a demanding taste. Find any station, and in 99% of cases you'll hear native or foreign pop-music. As for me, I am not a radio fan and listen to it really seldom.

The most popular media resource is the Internet. It represents all sources in one. If I want to read the daily news, I go online. If I want to read magazines about things that interest me, I surf the Internet. When I want to listen to the radio or to watch a new film, again I turn on my computer. Basically, Internet is the media resource which has successfully displaced all other means from use. The Internet, on the one hand, combines all the vices of the world, and on the other hand it's an invaluable source of information, providing quick access to it, no matter where you are. The global network enmeshes the globe. The Internet has many users and presents both opportunities and challenges. Examples can include blogs and podcasts (such as news, music, pre-recorded speech, and video).

TV is one of the best inventions the man has ever made. We are really beginning to forget what the world was without TV. Everybody knows what a great force is TV in the world today. We become better informed by watching documentaries, science programmes, discussions and political issues of the day. TV gives us opportunities to see the best actors, sport matches, to meet famous people. TV brings the world to our room. TV helps us to relax after hard work. Besides there is a considerable amount of TV programmes (news, current affairs viewpoints, musical reviews, sports review, travelers clubs, shows for kids, etc.) and they gather big audience. They provide useful topics for conversation and discussions. These programmes deal with political and social problems of modern society. Their aim is to give an analysis of the problems and to show different viewpoints. They are concerned with the national events. They show meetings with famous political analysts, discussing the most topical political problems of today.

To my mind we can't imagine our lives without mass media. It is silly to avoid them as we can use their advantages. Though we should be careful and filter all information we get.

## **Post-reading Activities**

**1. Find in the text the words that denote: *print media, TV programmes, Internet sources.***

### **2. Use the prepositions where necessary:**

1. People are united ... one global community ... the help of mass media.
2. Mass media influence ... the way people look ... the world.
3. People read newspapers ... their free time: many of them subscribe ... newspapers, others buy newspapers ... the newsstands.
4. Radio is especially popular ... drivers, and not ... a demanding taste.
5. When I want to listen ... music or to watch a new film, I turn ... my computer.
6. ... my mind we can't imagine our lives ... mass media.

### **3. What mass medium do the following words refer to? Prove your choice with the information from the text.**

- million copies appear every day
- you can hear native or foreign music
- invaluable source of information
- presents both opportunities and challenges
- gather big audiences
- shows different viewpoints.

### **4. Answer the following questions:**

1. What do mass media include nowadays?
2. What is the main purpose of all kinds of mass media?
3. What types of newspapers are mentioned in the text? What information do they provide the readers with?
4. Is radio for a demanding taste? What is it generally used for?
5. Why is the Internet especially popular with the younger generation?
6. What types of programmes are on TV today?
7. Is it possible to imagine our life without mass media?

### **5. Speak on the *advantages* and *disadvantages* of different kinds of mass media (newspapers, radio, Internet, television).**

**6. Read the following quotations and choose one or more you like most of all. What do you think the author means by these statements? Use them in the situation of your own.**

1. The press is the best instrument for enlightening the mind of man, and improving him as a rational, moral, and social being.

Thomas Jefferson

2. All of us who professionally use the mass media are the shapers of society. We can vulgarize that society. We can brutalize it. Or we can help lift it onto a higher level.

William Bernbach

3. What the mass media offers is not popular art, but entertainment which is intended to be consumed like food, forgotten, and replaced by a new dish.

W. H. Auden

4. Freedom of the press belongs to the man who owns one.

A. J. Liebling

5. A free press can, of course, be good or bad, but, most certainly without freedom, the press will never be anything but bad.

Albert Camus

6. Journalism largely consists in saying “Lord Jones is dead” to people who never knew Lord Jones was alive.

G. K. Chesterton

7. The difference between journalism and literature is that journalism is unreadable and literature is not read.

Oscar Wilde

**7. In group of two or three discuss the following questions and report back to the class on your major conclusion.**

- What do you feel was the biggest single news story in the past year? What is your opinion of the reporting of it?
- Do you know anybody who has ever been on the news? Have you? What was the story?

- Do the media concentrate too much on “bad news” and not enough on “good news” stories?
- What is “news”? Is “good news” really news?
- What criteria do you think newspapers and television use to decide on what news to present: what is really important or what sells newspapers?
- In what ways has new technology affected the way that news is produced and brought to us? How do you normally receive news?
- Different newspapers often have their own political ideology, they print stories which tend to support that ideology and keep their readers happy. Some people suggest that we should read newspapers with a different political ideology to our own. What do you think of this idea?

## **ADDITIONAL READING ACTIVITIES**

### **ADDITIONAL READING 1**

**Read and translate the text to learn more about social media, complete the exercises after it:**

#### **Social Media Effect on our culture**

Social media have been a major part of our daily lives. They totally effected our culture in positive and negative ways. There are so many positive impacts of social media on our culture. Social media increase the connections between people and create an environment in which you can share your opinions, pictures and lots of stuff. Social media improve creativity and social awareness for our society by interacting with other people and sharing new ideas and opinions. It is also important for any business because at some point, you need to use social media in your business. Social media develop international business and marketing. People prefer to buy stuff online. Social media create an opportunity to widen your world and make new friends from other countries. It is easier to learn about breaking news on social media because they have unlimited access and flexibility. On the other hand, social media influence our culture in negative ways. People can share whatever they want to on social media and some of them might be

inappropriate pictures. People have become more conservative about each other's point of view. People start to argue about each other's perspective related to political view, religion, social rights and culture. Social media have negative effect on youth. It reduce physical activities. People prefer to sit all day in front of computers and chat. Social media also have influenced youth in negative ways. Kids might be affected and manipulated by some sites in which there is inappropriate information. The ugly part of social media is that there is tons of unnecessary information shared by people and also bullying and harassment on social media has been increased. People can make brutal and negative comments about anything and anyone. Social media has good, bad and ugly impacts on our culture.

**1. Match the English words with their Russian equivalents:**

- |                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. major part             | a. издевательство             |
| 2. negative comments      | b. горячие новости            |
| 3. bulling                | c. спорить о чем-либо         |
| 4. to be affected         | d. общественное признание     |
| 5. breaking news          | e. негативные комментарии     |
| 6. to argue about         | f. иметь дело                 |
| 7. social awareness       | g. делиться чьим-либо мнением |
| 8. to share one's opinion | h. основная часть             |

**2. Here are some questions you might think about:**

1. What is social media?
2. What are positive impacts of social media on our culture?
3. Do people prefer to buy stuff online?
4. Can people share whatever they want to on social media?
5. What apportunities
6. Will the Internet lead to the "death" of paper editions? Why is it important for a newspaper to have a website today?

## **ADDITIONAL READING 2**

**Read and translate the text about television invention and be ready to answer the questions after it:**

### **Television Invention**

Television is a way of sending and receiving moving images and sounds over wires or through the air by electrical impulses. The big breakthrough in technology was the ability to send sound and pictures over the air. The word television comes from the Greek prefix tele- and the Latin word vision or “seeing from a distance”. The TV camera converts images into electrical impulses, which are sent along cables, or by radio waves, or satellite to a television receiver where they are changed back into a picture.

As with most inventions, television’s development depended upon previous inventions, and more than one individual contributed to the development of television, as we know it today. People started experimenting with television during the 19<sup>th</sup> century. When you ask the question – who invented television, you may get a few different answers.

In England in 1878, John Loggie Baird, a Scottish amateur scientist, successfully transmitted the first TV picture, after years of work, in 1926, with his mechanical system. Baird’s system used a mechanical camera consisting of a large spinning disc, with a spiral of holes that Paul Nipkow had developed in 1884. This old mechanical technology was quickly replaced by superior electronic television.

Philo Farnsworth successfully demonstrated electronic television in San Francisco, in 1927. Farnsworth, at the age of fifteen, began imagining ways that electronic television could work. One day while working in the fields among rows of vegetables, he was inspired. He realized that a picture could be dissected by a simple television camera into a series of lines of electricity. The lines would be transmitted so quickly that the eyes would merge the lines. Then, a cathode ray tube television receiver would change those lines back into a picture. Initially, television was available only in black and white, even though experiments with color began in the 1920s; however, you could not buy a color television until 1953.

Nobel laureate Ferdinand Braun invented the cathode ray tube, the basis of all modern television cameras and receivers. Vladimir Zworykin improved television with the invention of a completely electric camera – the Iconoscope, and a receiver – the Kinescope, which both used a cathode ray tube. David Sarnoff, head of RCA and founder of the NBC television network, backed his powerful belief in the possibilities of television with financial backing by hiring Zworykin and purchasing the rights to use Farnsworth's image dissector in RCA products.

**Here are some questions you might think about:**

1. How often do you watch TV?
2. What are the advantages and disadvantages of watching TV?
3. What kind of TV programmes do you usually watch?
4. What kind of TV shows do you not like? Why?
5. Does TV make a person passive? Does TV take away a person's ability to think for himself or herself?
6. Do you think that TV prevents people from communicating?
7. What do you think of TV shows that are designed to “discover new talents”?
8. If you couldn't watch TV at home but had to stay there, what would you do?
9. Could you live without TV for a week?
10. What do you think about reality shows?
11. Would you participate in one if you were invited?
12. Which channel do you like the best?
13. Do you like watching TV alone or with your family?
14. Who decides what to watch: the parent or the child?
15. Is television one of the best inventions of all times?
16. Why do you think television industry is so successful?
17. What do you think of the “rubbish” programmes on TV which are only dedicated to gossip about famous or pseudo famous people?
18. There is a famous English saying that goes “you are what you eat”. Does this apply to television? Can the programmes you watch affect your behavior?



## ADDITIONAL READING 3

### Listening Activities:

**Listen to the text and be ready to answer the questions:**

1. Are Mass Media the sum of the public mass distributors of news, entertainment and other information?
2. What key functions do Mass Media perform?
3. Do Mass Media have too much power?

### Pre-reading Activities:

**1. Match the English words with their Russian equivalents:**

- |                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. to distribute | a. выпуск            |
| 2. circulation   | b. зритель           |
| 3. forecast      | c. распространять    |
| 4. breaking news | d. бульварная газета |
| 5. satellite     | e. прогноз           |
| 6. tabloid       | f. горячая новость   |
| 7. to promote    | g. спутник           |
| 8. issue         | h. впитывать         |
| 9. viewer        | i. продвигать        |
| 10. to absorb    | j. тираж             |

**2. Think of the synonyms to the following adjectives:**

Entertaining, public, digital, mobile, particular, popular, creative, local, physical, controversial, educational.

**Read and translate the text about mass media in modern society:**

### Mass Media in Modern Society

Mass media are the sum of the public mass distributors of news, entertainment and other information. The technologies through which this communication takes place vary. Broadcast media such as radio, recorded music, film and television transmit their information electronically. Print media use a physical object such as a newspaper, book, pamphlet or comics, to distribute their information. Outdoor media are a form of mass media that comprises billboards, signs, or placards placed inside and outside of commercial buildings, sports stadiums, shops, and buses. Other outdoor media include flying billboards (signs in tow of airplanes),

blimps, and skywriting. Public speaking and event organizing can also be considered forms of mass media. The digital media comprise both the Internet and mobile mass communication. The Internet media provide many mass media services, such as e-mail, websites, blogs, and Internet-based radio and television. Mass media can be one of the hardest forms of media within which to decipher what is true and what is not. Mass media promote not only products, but moods, attitudes, and a sense of what is important.

Each mass media have its own content, types, its own creative artists and technicians, and its own business models. For example, the Internet includes podcasts and various other technologies built on top of the general distribution network. Usually, mass media aim to reach a very large market, such as the entire population of a country. By contrast, local media cover a much smaller population and area, focusing on regional news of interest, while specialty media are provided for particular demographic groups.

Mass media perform three key functions: educating, shaping public relations, and advocating for a particular policy or point of view. As education tools, media not only impart knowledge, but can be part of larger efforts to promote actions having social utility. As public relations tools, media assist organizations in achieving credibility and respect among public health opinion leaders, stakeholders, and other gatekeepers. Finally, as advocacy tools, mass media assist leaders in setting a policy agenda, shaping debates about controversial issues, and gaining support for particular viewpoints.

There are a number of uses for mass media including advocacy, enrichment, entertainment, journalism, and public service. Though mass media do not have the same impact as the local environment on the formation of a person's attitudes, the impact may be significant. Mass media can focus the public's attention on certain personalities and issues, with the result that people subsequently form opinions about them.

### **Post-reading Activities**

#### **1. Complete the following sentences with the appropriate word from the vocabulary:**

1. Mass media are the sum of the public mass ... of news, entertainment and other information.

2. ... such as radio, recorded music, film and television transmit their information electronically.
3. Other outdoor media include flying billboards (signs in tow of airplanes), blimps, ...
4. As ..., media not only impart knowledge, but can be part of larger efforts to promote actions having social utility.

**2. Do you think the following statements are true or false? Discuss your answer in pairs.**

1. Mass media are the sum of the public mass distributors of goods and services.
2. Public speaking and event organizing can't also be considered forms of mass media.
3. Each mass media have its own content, types, its own creative artists and technicians, and its own business models.
4. Outdoor media such as radio, recorded music, film and television transmit their information electronically.
5. Mass media can't focus the public's attention on certain personalities and issues, with the result that people don't subsequently form opinions about them.
6. There are a number of uses for mass media including advocacy, enrichment, entertainment, journalism, and public service.

**3. Answer the questions:**

1. What are mass media?
2. What technologies does this communication take place through?
3. Do print media use a physical object to distribute their information?
4. Mass media perform three key functions: educating, shaping public relations, and advocating for a particular policy or point of view, don't they?
5. What are outdoor mass media?
6. Do you personally feel that keeping up with current events is important?
7. What is the most important national and international story at the moment?

## **ADDITIONAL READING 4**

**Read and the text and speak on the role of the Internet in your life:**

### **The Internet and Communication**

Some say that the Internet makes the world smaller by bringing people together. To what extent do you agree that the Internet makes it easier for people to communicate with one another?

A global village, that is certainly what the world feels like nowadays. With the help of the World Wide Web, you can reach out and get to know people you might never have met in person. Articles can be co-authored, business deals can be finalized, degrees can be earned and at times even medical advice can be given – and all of this is just a click away.

Electronic mail, instant messages, web cameras and microphones – all these gadgets and programmes make the presence of the other person more real. With the help of visual reality you might even get a 3D image of the speaker! I believe the Internet is one of the best inventions of the last century, you can hardly get to miss anyone and nobody is really out of reach. You can keep in touch with your friends and be able to do your work from your bedroom in your pyjamas!

However, the Internet can also be a major source of harassment. Spammers and hackers can invade your privacy and get personal/confidential information, which otherwise they will never get access to. You are never out of anybody's reach, unless you make a conscious decision of not checking your email; there can be always more work waiting for you in your inbox and you might never have a moment to yourself. Worse yet, if you are a workaholic, you might never experience that stress-free vacation ever again in your life – simply because you have your mobile workplace with you all the time.

As a romantic, I will always look forward to getting an occasional letter in the snail mail. A personal letter, where I can sense the mood of the writer by the slants in his/her handwriting and get to know him/her better. Yet the Internet gives me everything I dream of in terms of communication – the speed, reliability, and convenience of time and place. I can certainly tolerate its shortcomings any day, as long as it keeps me close to my loved ones.

# UNIT 5 English-Speaking Countries

---

## The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

---

### Vocabulary

to be situated	climate
territory	wheat
population	constitution
surface	monarch
to vary	constitutional monarchy
mountain	the Head of State
vast	the Parliament
to influence	legislative
mild	executive
the whole ...	judicial
well developed	chamber
manufacture	to represent
financial	to belong to
commercial	prime minister
service	to be appointed
chemicals	flexible
natural resources	unwritten
agriculture	majority
to provide	court

**Quiz. Check your knowledge about Great Britain and do the quiz below in pairs:**

1. Which one is the official name of the country?
  - a) England
  - b) Great Britain
  - c) The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
2. What channel separates Great Britain from the continent?
  - a) the North Channel
  - b) the English Channel
  - c) the St. George's Channel

3. What seas is the UK washed by?
  - a) the North Sea
  - b) the Irish Sea
  - c) the Caribbean Sea
4. How many parts does the UK consist of?
  - a) 3
  - b) 4
  - c) 2
5. Match the country of the UK and its capital:
 

1. England	a) Belfast
2. Wales	b) Edinburgh
3. Northern Ireland	c) London
4. Scotland	d) Cardiff
6. Which is the highest mountain in the UK?
  - a) Cape Horn
  - b) Ben Nevis
  - c) Everest
7. What are the most important rivers of the UK?
  - a) the Thames
  - b) the Ohio
  - c) the Severn
8. Who rules Great Britain officially?
  - a) the Queen
  - b) the Prime Minister
  - c) the King
9. How many chambers does the British Parliament have?
  - a) 3
  - b) 5
  - c) 2

### **Pre-reading Activities**

**1. Make sure you know the pronunciation and the Russian equivalents to the following words and expressions:**

island, isles, square kilometer, ethnic group, percentage, mountainous, grassy, equipment, meadow, vehicle, remainder, machinery, sovereign, aircraft, raw materials, Parliament, chamber, responsibility, to reign

**2. Make example sentences using the following words:**

ocean, immigrant, island, important, to import / to export, highly developed, trade, to supply, wool, leader

## Reading Activities

1. Read the text and get ready to speak on the topic “The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland”:

### THE UNITED KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN AND NORTHERN IRELAND



The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is situated on the British Isles. The British Isles consist of two big islands: Great Britain and Ireland, and more than 5,000 small islands. The British Isles are washed by the English Channel, the North Sea, the Irish Sea and the Atlantic Ocean.

The United Kingdom consists of four countries: England, Scotland, Wales and Northern

Ireland. The territory of the UK is about 244,000 square kilometers. The population of the country is about 60 million people. The capital city is London, which is also the capital of Great Britain and England. The capital of Scotland is Edinburgh. Belfast is the capital of Northern Ireland; and Cardiff is the capital of Wales. The English, the Scottish, the Irish, and the Welsh are the main ethnic groups. Since 1950s immigrants from India, the West Indies, Pakistan, and Bangladesh have formed a large percentage of the population. English is the official language in the UK.

The surface of Great Britain varies greatly: mountainous Highlands, vast Lowlands, forests, grassy meadows. The mountains are not very high. The highest mountain peaks are Ben Nevis in Scotland (1,347 m) and Snowdon in Wales (1,085 m). There are many beautiful lakes in Northwest England, which form the famous Lake District. The rivers in Great Britain are not long. The most important of them are the Severn, the Thames, the Clyde and the Trent. Most of them flow into the North Sea. The mountains, the Atlantic Ocean and the warm waters of the Gulf Stream influence the climate of Great Britain. It is mild the whole year round.

The United Kingdom is a highly developed industrial country. It lives by manufacture, trade, financial and commercial services, and tourism. Major manufactures include motor vehicles, electronic equipment, metal goods, and chemicals. The United Kingdom has few natural resources. Agriculture provides 60% of the food needed. The remainder of the food supply and most raw materials are imported. The UK imports wheat, meat, butter, tea, tobacco, wool. The country exports machinery, ships, locomotives, aircraft, and motor vehicles.

The United Kingdom is a constitutional monarchy. This means that it has a monarch as the Head of State. The present Sovereign is Queen Elizabeth II. In practice the monarch has little power and can reign with the support of the Parliament. The Parliament realizes legislative power. It consists of two chambers: the House of Commons and the House of Lords. The main political parties represented in the Parliament are the Labour Party, the Conservative Party, and the Liberal Democrats.

Executive power belongs to the Prime Minister, who is the leader of the majority party in the Parliament, and to the cabinet, which is appointed by the Prime Minister mostly from among his or her party.

The constitution of the UK is flexible and partly unwritten. The judicial system consists of different kinds of courts.

### **Post-reading Activities**

#### **1. Complete the gaps to make the sentences:**

- 1) The United Kingdom is situated on ... .
- 2) The British Isles ... the English Channel, the North Sea, the Irish Sea and the Atlantic Ocean.
- 3) The territory of the United Kingdom is about ... square kilometers.
- 4) The English, the Scottish, the Irish, and the Welsh are the ... .. groups.
- 5) English is the ... .. in the United Kingdom.
- 6) The surface of Great Britain ... greatly.
- 7) The climate of Great Britain is ... the whole year round.
- 8) The United Kingdom is a highly ... country.
- 9) The United Kingdom has few ... resources.
- 10) The United Kingdom is a ... monarchy.
- 11) The present ... is Queen Elizabeth II.



**2. Find the antonyms to the following words:**

small, long, warm, majority, high, beautiful, natural, flexible, mountainous, mild, to be imported, written

**3. Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What is the official name of Great Britain?
- 2) How many people live in the United Kingdom? Which ethnic groups do they represent?
- 3) How does the surface of Great Britain vary?
- 4) Where is the famous Lake District situated?
- 5) What influences the climate of Great Britain?
- 6) Where do the rivers of Great Britain flow into?
- 7) The United Kingdom is an agricultural country, isn't it?
- 8) What do major manufactures include?
- 9) What is the political system of the United Kingdom?
- 10) What are the main political parties represented in the Parliament?

**4. Talking Point.** *Some people think that the monarchy should be abolished because it has no power and it costs the State a lot of money to maintain. How useful do you think the monarchy is in Britain today?*

**5. Make sure you know the answers to the questions below. If no, use available sources to get the necessary information:**

1. Who was the mother of Queen Elizabeth I?
2. From which group of invaders did England get its name?
3. What happens to a bill after it has been passed by the House of Commons?
4. Where would you find a kirk?
5. What is the connection between the Mayflower and the United States of America?
6. At what age can you drive a car in Britain?
7. What happens on St Valentine's Day?
8. Which country is sometimes called Ulster?
9. When do the British open their Christmas presents?
10. What country a red dragon is the symbol of?

# The United States of America

---

## Vocabulary

to occupy	above (below) sea level
area	climate
region	- arctic climate
coast	- continental climate
to include	- subtropical climate
to border on	to blow
a border	typhoon
north, northern	to possess
south, southern	industrial enterprises
west, western	to be made up of
east, eastern	Indian
to generalize	to emerge from
landscape	colony
different	to be admitted
to range from ... to	government
moist	the seat of the government
dry	the Senate
bald	the House of Representatives
rain forests	highly developed
desert	industrial

## Pre-reading Exercises:

### 1. Study the pronunciation of the following words:

occupy, area, the Pacific Ocean, include, generalize, landscape, desert, bald, above, below, the Rocky Mountains, the Cordillera, the Sierra Nevada, the Mississippi, the Missouri, the Rio Grande, the Columbia, climate, possess, non-fuel natural resources, iron ore, railway carriages, textiles, furniture, vegetables, recognize, ratify, executive, legislative, judicial, the Supreme Court, the House of Representatives

**2. Put the following words and geographical names into five columns:**

mountains	rivers	natural resources	industrial production	agricultural production
-----------	--------	-------------------	-----------------------	-------------------------

Mount McKinley, railway carriages, copper, the Columbia, vegetables, ships, silver, the Mississippi, cars, zinc, the Sierra Nevada, aircrafts, phosphate rock, wheat, the Rocky Mountains, paper, tobacco, the Cordillera, cotton, furniture, the Missouri, textiles, machine tools, iron ore, the Rio Grande.

**Reading Activities**

**1. Read the text and get ready to speak on the topic “The United States of America”:**

**THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA**

The United States of America is the fourth largest country in the world (after Russia, Canada, and China). It occupies a large area in the central part of the North American continent. Its western coast is washed by the Pacific Ocean and its eastern coast – by the Atlantic Ocean. It also includes Alaska in the north and Hawaii in the Pacific Ocean. The total area of the country is about 9.5 million square kilometers\*. The USA borders on Canada in the north and on Mexico in the south. It also has a sea border with Russia.

It’s impossible to generalize about the weather and the landscape because the country occupies nearly half of the continent. Different parts of the country range from moist rainforest areas to dry desert regions and bald mountain peaks. Mount McKinley in Alaska of more than 6,000 meters above sea level is the highest point in the USA, while part of Death Valley in California is 86 meters below sea level. In the west of the country there is a large mountain area occupying about one-third of the territory. The highest mountains are the Rocky Mountains, the Cordillera, and the Sierra Nevada. The heart of the United States is a vast plain.

America’s largest rivers are the Mississippi, the Missouri, the Rio Grande, and the Columbia. The Great Lakes on the border with Canada are the largest and the deepest in the USA.

---

\* The total area of the USA is measured from 9.5 to 9.8 million kmI according to various estimates.

The climate of the country varies greatly. The coldest regions are in the north, with the arctic climate of Alaska. The climate of the central part is continental; the south has a subtropical climate. Hot winds blowing from the Gulf of Mexico often bring typhoons.

The United States possesses vast non-fuel natural resources. The major resources are iron ore, zinc, copper, gold, silver and phosphate rock.

The USA is a highly developed industrial country. It produces one quarter of the world's coal and one seventh of the world's petroleum. The industrial enterprises of the country produce aircrafts, cars, ships, railway carriages, machine tools, textiles, furniture, and paper.

Farmers grow wheat, corn, cotton, tobacco and all kinds of vegetables and fruit.

The population of the country is about 335 million. Being mainly European, Asian, and African in origin, the Americans are made up of nearly all races and nations, including the Native Americans – Indians.

The largest cities of the USA are New York, Los Angeles, Chicago, Philadelphia, San Francisco, Washington and others.

The United States emerged from 13 British colonies located along the East Coast. Disputes between Great Britain and the colonies led to the adoption of the Declaration of Independence on July 4, 1776. Then the Revolutionary War between the colonies and the United Kingdom started, and Britain recognized the U. S. independence in 1783. The country's constitution was adopted on September 17, 1787 and ratified by the states in 1788.

Nowadays the USA is a federal republic. It is made up of 50 states and the District of Columbia, a special federal area where the capital of the country, Washington, is situated. The District of Columbia is not a part of any state. The newest states are Alaska and Hawaii, admitted in 1959. Each state has its own government. The seat of the central (federal) government is Washington, DC.

According to the US Constitution, there are three branches of state power: the executive power, headed by the President; the legislative power, exercised by the Congress; and the judicial power with the Supreme Court at the head. The Congress consists of the Senate and the House of Representatives.

There are two main political parties in the USA: the Republican and the Democratic.

## Post-reading Activities

### 1. Say whether the following sentences are true or false:

- 1) The USA is situated in the central part of the North American Continent.
- 2) The USA has a border with Russia.
- 3) The largest rivers of the USA are the Mississippi, the Missouri, the Rio Grande, and the Amazon.
- 4) The USA emerged from Spanish colonies in XVII century.
- 5) The USA is a federal republic.
- 6) The capital of the USA is New-York.
- 7) The USA is made up of 51 states.

### 2. Complete the following sentences with the appropriate word from the list. Put the verbs into the correct form:

*to border, typhoons, to generalize, to vary, the seat, to occupy, Canada, to emerge from*

- 1) The USA ... a large area in the central part of the North American Continent.
- 2) The USA ... on Canada in the north and on Mexico in the south.
- 3) It's impossible ... about the weather and the landscape of the USA.
- 4) The Great Lakes on the border with ... are the largest and the deepest in the USA.
- 5) The climate of the USA ... greatly.
- 6) Hot winds blowing from the Gulf of Mexico often bring ... .
- 7) The USA... 13 British colonies located along the East Coast.
- 8) ... of the central (federal) government is Washington, DC.

### 3. Answer the questions:

- 1) Can you describe the geographical position of the USA?
- 2) What are the total area and the population of the USA?
- 3) What is the climate of the USA like?
- 4) How can you characterize the natural resources of the country?
- 5) What nations are the Americans made up of?
- 6) What are the major cities of the USA?
- 7) What is the political system of the USA?
- 8) What are the branches of the US government?

#### **4. Translate into English:**

- 1) США находятся в центральной части материка Северная Америка и омываются Тихим и Атлантическим океанами.
- 2) США граничат с Канадой, Мексикой и Россией.
- 3) Климат в стране разнообразный – от арктического до континентального и субтропического.
- 4) США – высокоразвитая промышленная и аграрная страна с обширными природными ресурсами.
- 5) США состоят из 50 штатов и округа Колумбия.
- 6) Законодательная власть США, или Конгресс, состоит из Палаты представителей и Сената.

**5. Do you know any famous American historical figures? Choose a personality and be ready to tell the class about him/her.**

**6. In pairs or small groups, plan your sightseeing tour of the United States.**

### **ADDITIONAL READING ACTIVITIES**

#### **ADDITIONAL READING 1**

**Read the following text and be ready to retell it according to your own plan:**

#### **The British, Their Customs and Traditions**

It's a well-known fact that the English, the Welsh, the Scottish and the Irish live in the United Kingdom. But these four nations have their own character and way of life. They say that the Irish are great talkers and very religious, the Scots are serious, cautious and thrifty people, and the Welsh are great singers and dancers. The English are often thought to be cold, aristocratic, suspicious of changes and slow to accept new ideas. But the British also have some common values and beliefs. They are conservative, they love animals and nature, they value privacy and they are always talking about the weather.

One of the most widespread values among British people is their love for animals. There is a pet in every second house in the

country. There are special hospitals which treat injured wild animals. Cruelty to animals is a criminal offence. Moreover there are thousands of graveyards for animals of any kind in Britain.

The British value their right to privacy both in their own house and in everyday life. It is rude to ask other people about their salary and their family or sex life unless you know them very well. That is why the British often talk about the weather as it is a very convenient topic to “fill the gap” in any conversation.

Everybody knows that Britain is a “land of tradition” and British people carefully follow their old customs and traditions. The best examples are their queen, money system, their weights and measures. The British didn't change their system of currency and they use non-metric system of measurement (for example, mile (=1.609 km), yard (=91.44 cm), foot (=30.48 cm) and inch (=2.54 cm); pint (=568 ml), pound (=453.59237 gram).

They also drive on the left-hand side of the road.

Some ceremonies are traditional, such as the ceremony of the Keys at the Tower of London (this ceremony is 700 years old and it takes place every night), the Changing of the Guard at Buckingham Palace, Trooping the Colour (this spectacular ceremony takes place on the Queen's ‘official’ birthday on the second Saturday in June) or the annual ceremony of the State Opening of Parliament (is one of the most fascinating ceremonies that takes place every year in November).

More than that, there are many traditions that have become part of British everyday life. British mail boxes, telephone boxes and double-decked buses are traditionally red. On Sundays letters are not delivered, all theatres are closed and only a few Sunday papers are published. There are also some traditions concerning food. English cooking is heavy and substantial. The traditional English breakfast consists of porridge or cornflakes with milk or cream, bacon and eggs, jam or marmalade with buttered toast, tea or coffee. But nowadays more and more people prefer a continental breakfast consisting of rolls and butter and a cup of coffee to start a day.

Tea drinking is a special page in English life. The British are the world's greatest tea drinkers. They drink a quarter of all the tea grown in the world each year. They say “If you are cold, tea will warm you. If you are hot, it will cool you. If you are depressed, it will cheer you up. If you are excited, it will calm you”.

Today the British are becoming more adventurous in their cooking and eating habits thanks to numerous immigrants from all over the world. Chinese, Indian and Pakistani restaurants are very popular in the country.

Great Britain is full of customs and traditions which enrich the lives of the British and make them feel proud of their country, its history and culture.

**1. Make a list of new words and study them.**

**2. Can you give any interesting information about Belarusian customs and traditions?**

## **ADDITIONAL READING 2**

**Read the text and be ready to discuss the English character:**

### **The English**

What is characteristic of the English way of life? First, the English, and the British on the whole, are very faithful to their traditions. The Briton likes to go through his ancient ceremonies as he has always performed them feeling that he is keeping faith with his ancestors.

As to the English character, one often hears of the Englishman's 'reserve', how he likes to keep himself; and how on a long railway journey with four Englishmen in the carriage, often there won't be a word spoken during the whole journey. The Englishman thinks it is a bad manner to ask personal questions. English people love privacy.

The English like their home. There's no place like home, they say, "The Englishman's home is his castle", is a saying known all over the world; and it's true that English people prefer small houses built to house one family, perhaps with a small garden. The fire is the focus of the English home. What do other nations sit around? The answer is they don't. They go out to cafes or cocktail bars. For the English it is the open fire and the ceremony of English tea. Traditionally tea is served with milk, and the tea hour (the famous "five o'clock") in England has become a ritual. This ritual is of greatest importance, oh yes! Tea, hot and strong, on all occasions



and from morning till night. Tea for breakfast to stimulate you for the day's work, tea for lunch to keep out the cold, tea – several cups – in the afternoon to cheer you up, and tea at night to send you to sleep.

Another thing – they like the Nature, the fields, the forest, the parks, the animals, the birds. The everyday outdoor exercise – a constitutional – is a must, too. They go out for a walk in all weather, and they are fond of picnicking.

The English are a funny lot, a very peculiar lot of people. They have fixed ideas about clothes and other things. They prefer in everything not the new but the good quality. They don't like the brand-new, in fact everything that looks bought yesterday. The British hate too much order in their streets, and they hate too much order in their thoughts. They don't like theories and systems. You may criticize everything and everybody in England, they accept criticism easily, and they do not take it seriously. Snobbery is not so common in England today as it was at the beginning of the century. It still exists, however. The popular English newspapers know that their readers are snobs and that's why papers give a lot of unimportant and useless information.

The English are disciplined. They sit out with angelic patience, sometimes under heavy rain or the whole night long till morning, forming large queues for theatres and cinemas, or even at a bus stop. Why sit though? Why not stand? Because for long queuing they bring their camp-stools, a bag of sandwiches, or some fruit. Some like reading books or writing letters while queuing.

Then, the English like punctuality. If an Englishman invites you for dinner at eight, he does not mean half past nine, he means eight. Do not bow and never shake hands with anyone. When a lady comes into a room where there are a number of gentlemen, these will have to get up and will not sit down again until she has sat down herself. The habit of helping each other into overcoats is not compulsory in England, especially not with men who very often do not wear a coat at all, even in winter.

All invitations to parties, dinners, weddings, etc. have to be directed to the wives, or wives and husbands together, never to the husband alone. They are usually written by the hostess. The guests don't take flowers to the hostess, and this is one of the reasons why there are not many flower shops in English towns. Whenever you

have spent a night or a weekend in somebody else's house in England, you have to write a letter, if possible at once when you get back. It would be considered very bad manners not to observe this custom – even if you haven't enjoyed yourself at all!

Then, the English people, both young and old, love sports, all kinds of sports, they are born sportsmen. They say they have it in the blood. So whenever you start a conversation in England you inevitably get around to two subjects – the weather and sport, which are as much part of English life as roast beef and the Houses of Parliament. Most of the popular games have originated from this country: football, tennis, badminton and others. The most popular games in England today are football, that is soccer or rugby, and cricket.

And last, the English are conservative, first of all on a large scale which their attitude to the monarchy typifies. But England is full of small-scale and local conservatisms. Regiments, schools, clubs and societies, which the English especially like, have their own traditions, and such groups don't like to change their traditions which, as they think, differentiate them, as groups, from the rest of the world.

**Answer the questions:**

1. Why are the English so faithful to their traditions?
2. Do the English like asking personal questions?
3. What houses do English people prefer and why?
4. What is the chief thing in the English home?
5. What ritual is of greatest importance for the English?
6. Which do the English like in everything – the new or the good quality?
7. Are the English snobs?
8. What proves that the English are disciplined?
9. Do they observe the habit of helping each other into overcoats in England?
10. If an English family is going to give a party, who of the family usually writes the invitations and to whom are the letters of invitation directed?
11. What is one of the reasons that there are not many flower shops in British towns?

12. Why is it important to write a letter after a stay in somebody else's house in England?
13. What are the most popular subjects of conversation in Britain?
14. What are the most popular games in England?
15. What facts prove that England is full of small-scale and local conservatisms?

### **ADDITIONAL READING 3**

**Translate the text in written form:**

#### **The English Way**

When we arrived in London the day was fine and warm. After a short rest we went to see the city.

The traffic regulations in Great Britain differ from those in Belarus and other countries; we are to keep to the right, but in the streets of London you are to keep to the left. The streets of London are very interesting. In some parts of it they look very much alike, as the houses are the same in style. And sometimes the same street may have different names. For example – Grosvenor Street at Hyde Park is no longer Grosvenor Street a little farther, but Grosvenor Road. In the oldest part of London many streets are quite narrow and have strange names, as White Horse Street, Milk Street, and Honey Lane.

The houses are not very big; they are mostly two-storied buildings with as many doors and as many little gardens as there are lodgers in the house. On the first, or ground floor there are usually two rooms, and on the second, or upper floor, also two. In the bigger of the lower rooms the family cooks meals, eats and lives. It's a kitchen, or a living-room. On the upper floor they usually have bedrooms. Imagine how surprised we were to see the windows of one and the same house painted in different colours. And not only the windows. Whole parts of houses are in different colours, that is, doors, steps and walls.

“What is the idea of painting houses in this way?” I asked.

“We don't notice such things. We are used to them. Everybody paints his own part of the house in the colour he likes best”, was the answer.

In many houses windows are different from ours. To open such windows, you have to raise or to lower them. One may ask why they have such kinds of windows. The thing is that the winds in England often become very strong and may easily break windows of the kind we have.

Though central heating is found in many houses of London you may often see a fireplace in English houses. I asked my English friend, "Why must you have open fires in the houses?" He laughed and said, "What shall we do without them in the evenings?" This was, of course, a joke but it helped me to understand the whole thing. The fireplace is a symbol of a happy family life in this country. Englishmen like to sit in the evening round the fire. It's a tradition.

The next day was Sunday. Sunday is a very quiet day in London. Most shops are closed and so are the theatres and most of cinemas. Londoners like to get out of town on Sundays. There are thousands of cars on the roads into the country. The south coast is only 50 or 60 miles away and people like to go down to the sea for the day. Our English friends took us to Brighton. We enjoyed the journey but not the swimming because the water was very cold.

The English certainly have many traditions, manners and customs of which they can be proud, and English humour is one of them. It is ironical, often directed against oneself in a self-critical way.

Obraztsov, the Russian actor, observed the English type of humour very carefully, telling the following little story as an illustration: "While I was in England, I always took my camera with me and I tried to take shots of everything I saw, particularly everyday life. One day I went to Petticoat Lane. One of the passengers in the bus was gaily telling us about this market as a place known for a long time for its thieves. Once when a woman came out of the market she had been offered her own petticoat at a low price, the very same petticoat that she had been wearing when she came into the market. They say that the word 'Petticoat' in the name of the market is explained by this fact. Well, the conductor appeared to be paying no attention to our conversation and was whistling some tune. The bus came to a stop at the market. The gay passenger shouted: 'Good luck! You'll have something to photograph, in the market alright!' And the conductor added, 'If you've still got your camera'.

**Answer the questions:**

1. In which way are the traffic regulations in the United Kingdom different from those in Belarus?
2. Can you remember any streets of London which have strange names? Are there any in Minsk or in your native town?
3. What does a British house look like?
4. Why do you see a fireplace in almost every British house?
5. What do Londoners usually do on Sundays?

**ADDITIONAL READING 4**

**Read the text and give your comments on the peculiar features of the British, the Americans and the Belarusians:**

**British and American Character**

One often hears of the Englishman's reserve; how he likes to "keep himself". That is not the case in America. The Englishman thinks it is ill-mannered to ask personal questions. The American prefers sociability.

The Englishman's suburban house has its little garden with a hedge or a fence all round it to separate him from his neighbours. – "The Englishman's home is his castle". The American houses have no hedges or fences. There is generally just a strip of grass with trees on it. The American in his home doesn't object to being seen by everyone – he actually likes it. And inside the house, instead of the separate hall, living-room so typical of the English house, the American has the "open plan" house, just one large room where all the family activities (usually noisy) go on, with, perhaps, a "dining corner" or a "kitchen-breakfast-room".

With this sociability goes overwhelming hospitality. You get taken to parties at the houses of your friends and of your friends' friends; you are invited to theatres, dinners, sports meetings, motor trips; from the first minute you are on "first name" terms with the people you meet; they all show the keenest interest in your affairs and ask you to let them know if they can help you. And no one strikes up acquaintance sooner than the Americans do, but it's really hard to make a real friendship.

Americans like new things. In general they love change; they call it “the spirit of adventure”. They like to change homes and jobs, those who have them and can afford a change of course. America is a nation on wheels, and you have a feeling that the American man thinks longer and more earnestly about choosing his car than choosing his wife.

**Make up your own questions to the text.**

## **ADDITIONAL READING 5**

**Read the following text and think about some more interesting information concerning the United Kingdom:**

### **Some Interesting Facts about Britain**

- London was born hundreds of years ago. Here, on the banks of the Thames, was a small settlement named Llyn-din, which means a lonely port. To this place, in the year 55 B.C., Julius Caesar came from Rome.

- The ancient stones of the House of Commons, if they could speak, would tell us many interesting things about the first Norman parliament. They would tell us about Oliver Cromwell who was installed here as Lord Protector.

- This is Whitehall. Once there used to be a palace here, the White Hall, where from the 12<sup>th</sup> to the 16<sup>th</sup> century, English kings and queens lived. Now it is just a street of government offices.

- The first section of the London Underground – and the first underground railway in the world – was opened by the Metropolitan railway on January 10, 1863. What kind of trains were operated on it? Of course, you are right – the trains were stream-hauled.

- Tea is the most important of English drinks. But it is a relative late-comer to the British shores. Although the custom of drinking tea dates back to the third millennium B.C. in China, it was not until the mid 17<sup>th</sup> century that the drink first appeared in Britain. Curiously, it was the London coffee houses that were responsible for introducing tea to England.

### **Find the necessary information to complete the sentences:**

1. Once there used to be a palace here, the White Hall, where from the ... century, English kings and queens lived.
2. Although the custom of drinking tea dates back to the ... millennium B.C. in China, it was not until the mid ... century that the drink first appeared in Britain.
3. To this place, in the year ... B.C., Julius Caesar came from Rome.
4. The ancient stones of the ..., if they could speak, would tell us many interesting things about the first Norman Parliament.
5. The first section of the London Underground – and the first underground railway in the world – was opened by the Metropolitan railway on ... .

### **ADDITIONAL READING 6**

**Read the text about well-known British castles and prepare the presentations describing the famous castles in Belarus:**

#### **Castles in Britain**

Castles have always played an important military, economic and social role in Great Britain and Ireland. The word “castle” comes from a Latin word meaning “fortress”. There are thousands of castles in the UK and millions of tourists visit them every year. Spectacularly situated, packed with history and scattered throughout the land, Britain’s castles can interest anybody. Look at some of the most famous castles on the territory of the UK.

*The Tower of London* is one of the world’s major tourist attractions and a UNESCO World Heritage Site, attracting over two million visitors a year from all over the world. In the early 1080s, William the Conqueror began to build a massive stone tower in the centre of his London fortress. As a royal palace, fortress, prison, place of torture and execution, armoury, Royal Mint, royal zoo and jewel house, the Tower of London has witnessed many great events in British history. The Tower is perhaps most well known today for keeping the greatest working collection of the Crown Jewels in the world. What’s more, with amazing architecture, world-famous Beefeaters, the ravens, spectacular royal armour and plenty of

exhibitions and activities, it provides an unforgettable day out for everyone.

Situated on the outskirts of London, *Windsor Castle* is an official residence of The Queen and the largest castle in the world that is still lived in. William the Conqueror built the castle in 1080 and it has remained a royal palace and fortress for over 900 years. The castle includes the 15<sup>th</sup>-century St. George's Chapel, one of the most beautiful examples of medieval church architecture in England. The chapel is the official home of the Order of the Garter.

*Warwick Castle* is situated on a rocky cliff above the River Avon. It is a magnificent 14<sup>th</sup>-century fortress and the finest medieval castle in England which is surrounded by gardens, lawns, and woodland where peacocks walk freely. Centuries ago the castle was the home of the powerful Earls of Warwick. Now it belongs to the company that also owns Madame Tussaud's Wax Museum in London.

*Edinburgh Castle* is in the heart of the Scottish capital. It is a fortress which dominates the skyline of the city, from its position atop the volcanic Castle Rock. It is visited by over one million people every year. Tourists visit the Castle not only because of the historical interest of this amazing fortress but because it offers splendid panoramic views of the city. It was the seat of the Scottish kings, and the historical apartments include the Great Hall, where an interesting collection of weapons and armour is kept now. Edinburgh Castle is also the home of the One O'Clock Gun. It is fired every day except Sunday at 1.00 pm for everyone to check their clocks and watches. Every August the Royal Edinburgh Military Tattoo, an international festival of military bands, takes place at the walls of the Castle.

*Balmoral Castle* is the private residence of The Queen in Scotland. It is a favourite residence for The Queen and her family during the summer holiday period in August and September. 85,000 people visit Balmoral Castle each year.

*Caernarfon Castle* is possibly the most famous castle in Wales. It was built in 1283 not only as a military fortress but also as a seat of the government and a royal palace. In 1969 the castle became known all over the world as the place where a magnificent ceremony of the coronation of Prince Charles as Prince of Wales took place.



## VOCABULARY

**to scatter** рассыпать, разбрасывать

heritage наследие

**witness** свидетель

**to provide** обеспечивать, давать

the Order of Garter Орден Подвязки

**band** оркестр

**mint** монетный двор

### 1. In which paragraph of the article is the following information mentioned?

- the biggest inhabited castle in the world
- a former home of a nobleman
- a home of a great festival
- a very important event occurred there
- the origin of a word
- great treasure is kept there
- the royal family like to spend their holiday there

### 2. True or false? If the sentence is false, put it right.

1. The word “castle” comes from a Greek word meaning “palace”.
2. Warwick Castle is a UNESCO World Heritage Site, attracting over two million visitors a year from all over the world.
3. The ceremony of the coronation of Prince Charles as Prince of Wales took place in the Tower of London.
4. Every August the Royal Edinburgh Military Tattoo takes place at the walls of Balmoral Castle.
5. The Great Hall with an interesting collection of weapons and armour is in Edinburgh Castle.
6. St. George’s Chapel in Windsor Castle is the official home of the Crown Jewels.
7. Nobody lives in Windsor Castle anymore.
8. The One O’Clock Gun in Edinburgh Castle is fired every day at 1.00 pm for everyone to check their clocks and watches.

### 3. Answer the following questions:

1. How many castles are there in Great Britain?

2. What major event takes place at the walls of Edinburgh Castle every August?
3. Why is Caernarfon Castle famous all over the world?
4. How many people visit Balmoral Castle every year?
5. Where are the Crown Jewels kept?
6. What is St. George's Chapel famous for?
7. Which castle is a UNESCO World Heritage Site?

## **ADDITIONAL READING 7**

**Read the text and say what interesting information you have learnt:**

### **Cultural Background of the USA**

American culture is a *Western culture*, with influences from Europe, the native American people, African Americans and groups of immigrants. The United States is traditionally known as a melting pot, with the trend toward cultural diversity. Due to the extent of American culture there are many integrated subcultures within the United States.

The citizens and many other residents of the United States refer to themselves and each other as *Americans*, and their country as *the United States* or as *America*. Non-Hispanic Americans understand, and may say, *the Americas* with the meaning of the two major continents of the Western hemisphere, but generally will resist using *America* in that sense. While to many foreigners *Yankee* is synonymous with the American people, the Americans almost always use the term for the sports teams, or with reference to those living in the northeastern US in contrast to Southerners. The major exception to that is Americans' occasional ironic usage of *Yankee*, or especially *Yank* construed by the Americans as the British usage.

Where did the word *Yankee* come from? Although there are many different theories, nobody really knows. Whatever its origin, the term was used in colonial times by New Yorkers and by British soldiers to refer jokingly to the people of New England (now the six states between New York State and the Canadian border). During the American Revolutionary War (1775–1783), the New Englanders adopted the term; they have used it ever since, with great pride, to refer to themselves.

About half of the Americans live in what is known as the suburbs, or belts around major cities. The suburban nuclear family is identified as part of the 'American dream': a married couple with children owning a house in the suburbs. One of the biggest differences in suburban living is the housing occupied by the families. The suburbs are filled with single-family houses, which are usually one or two stories tall, separated from retail districts, industrial areas, and sometimes even public schools.

Variations in the traditions occur due to class, racial, ethnic, religious, regional and other groups of people.

**Find the additional information about the American culture and produce your own projects on the topic.**

# UNIT 6 Festivals and Celebrations in Great Britain and the United States of America

---

## Vocabulary

bank holidays	crackers
public holidays	dessert
international	to be broadcast
national	to be named after
local	employers
religious	fireworks
to observe	Hogmanay
to celebrate	household
to commemorate	fairs
to honour	to enrich
to decorate	to perform
occasion	performer
to preserve a tradition	performance
parade	to showcase
to give presents	Military Tattoo
the Christmas pudding	carnival
carol services	inspiration
roast turkey	to have bonfires
wrapped in	Trooping the Colour

### Pre-reading Activities:

#### 1. Practice saying the following words:

Religious, mistletoe, wrapped, dessert, Hogmanay, resurrection, fair, referred to, Auld Lang Syne, Norwegian, throughout.

#### 2. Match the English words with their Russian equivalents:

- |              |                                      |
|--------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. mistletoe | a. фарш, начинка                     |
| 2. holly     | b. брюссельская капуста              |
| 3. ivy       | с. инсценировка евангельской легенды |

- |                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 4. a nativity play        | d. омела белая         |
| 5. parsnip                | e. плющ                |
| 6. stuffing               | f. остролист           |
| 7. Brussels sprouts       | g. остатки еды         |
| 8. leftovers              | h. пастернак           |
| 9. New Year's resolutions | i. воскрешение         |
| 10. to chime              | j. принимать гостей    |
| 11. to host               | к. звонить, отбивать   |
| 12. resurrection          | l. новогодние обещания |

### 3. Read these expressions and find their English equivalents in the text:

обычно называют (обычно относят к), представил концепцию, действует и сегодня, подается обед, густой десерт, транслируется обращение, обещающая избавиться от плохой привычки, первый след (первый гость), проводят время на свежем воздухе.

### Reading Activities

#### Read the text and get ready to speak on the topic "Public holidays in the United Kingdom":

Public holidays in the UK are commonly referred to as bank holidays. As the UK is a country made of four regions, official holidays in the UK depend on if you are in England, Wales, Scotland, or Northern Ireland. In 1871, Sir John Lubbock introduced the Bank Holidays Act, it indicated the concept of holidays with pay. The move was such a popular one that there were even suggestions that August Bank Holiday should be called St Lubbock's day.

The Banking and Financial Dealings Act 1971, is in force today and there are eight bank holidays in England and Wales: **New Year's Day** (January, 1), **Good Friday** (March or April), **Easter Monday** (March or April), **Early May bank holiday** – May Day (not necessarily May, 1), **Spring bank holiday** (at the end of May), **Late Summer bank holiday** (at the end of August), **Christmas Day** (December, 25) and **Boxing Day** (December, 26); nine – in Scotland (St Andrew's Day – November, 30); ten – in Northern Ireland. When the usual date of a bank or public holiday falls on a

Saturday or Sunday, a 'substitute day' is given, normally, the following Monday. Once upon a time everything shut on a bank holiday: offices, banks, shops, but nowadays many offices and shops remain open, only banks are not allowed to operate on bank holidays. The only day when most shops close in the UK is Christmas Day.

**Christmas** is celebrated on December 25<sup>th</sup>. Most people in the UK celebrate Christmas, even if they are not religious. Christmas is a family holiday and everyone decorates their houses with mistletoe, holly, ivy and colorful lights. Christmas trees can be found in many city centres, with the most famous being the Norwegian tree in Trafalgar Square, London. Christmas carol services and nativity plays are popular. On Christmas Day, a special Christmas dinner or lunch is served during the middle of the day. The menu usually stays pretty traditional – roast turkey; potatoes and other vegetables such as carrots and parsnips; stuffing; puddings; gravy; mini sausages wrapped in bacon; and Brussels sprouts. Before the food is served, the breaking of the Christmas crackers is the usual tradition. Inside these wrapped tubes are paper crowns, small gift items and usually a joke. Following the meal is the Christmas pudding. A hot, dense dessert similar to a fruitcake, Christmas pudding often contains a variety of dried fruits and a sticky texture. Brandy is sometimes poured over it.

Later in the day, the Queen's Christmas message is broadcast on television and radio throughout England, the UK and the Commonwealth.

**Boxing Day.** The day after Christmas is called Boxing Day. It's believed to have been named after the 'Christmas box' of money or gifts which employers used to give to servants and tradesmen. Today people give each other presents in boxes on this day. Most people spend the day with their families, going for a walk, watching sports or eating the Christmas leftovers.

On **New Year's Eve** on December 31<sup>st</sup>, it is traditional to celebrate midnight with friends or family and to sing 'Auld Lang Syne', a folk song with words by the Scottish poet Robert Burns. The party can last well into New Year's Day (January, 1). In England, the largest celebrations take place in London, with fireworks exploding over the London Eye at midnight. Big Ben chimes at this time to literally ring in the New Year. Most of the

crowds in London are gathered at Piccadilly Circus or Trafalgar Square. Many people make 'New Year's resolutions', promising to achieve a goal or break a bad habit in the coming year. But not all people celebrate the New Year in England; some ignore it completely and go to bed at the same time as usual.

In Scotland, the celebration of the New Year is called Hogmanay. There are big parties across the country with lots of music, dancing, food and fireworks – but Edinburgh hosts some of the biggest. "First footing" is considered very important. The first person to enter the house when New Year has begun must be a man, never a woman, and he must be dark-haired or with eyebrows which meet in the middle. Ideally he should be carrying a piece of coal, bread, and money or salt; these ensure that the household will enjoy warmth, food and wealth in the coming year.

**Easter** is a Christian holiday celebrating the resurrection of Jesus Christ. People celebrate Easter for four days: from Good Friday to Easter Monday. It is traditional to give each other chocolate eggs and eat 'hot cross buns' (sweet buns with a cross design). Children decorate eggs or take part in Easter egg hunts. On the afternoon of Easter Sunday the famous Easter Parade can be seen in Battersea Park in London.

There are two Mondays in **May** and one Monday at the end of **August** when people have the day off work or school and spend some time outdoors enjoying sunshine. In spite of the terrible British weather, many people use bank holidays to go away for a long weekend. This means that the museums and other public attractions: historic houses, zoos, sports centres, etc. remain open. Many families have picnics. There are many sports meetings, horse races and large fairs with swings, roundabouts, a Punch and Judy show.

There are many more events across the UK, throughout the year. Though they are not days off, many people celebrate them. Halloween (October, 31), Bonfire Night (November, 5), St. Valentine's Day (February, 14), St. Patrons' Days, Notting Hill Carnival, etc. are popular with the public.

## **Post-reading Activities**

### **1. Agree or disagree with the following statements:**

1. Official holidays in the UK don't depend on if you are in England, Wales, Scotland, or Northern Ireland. 2. The Banking and Financial Dealings Act of 1971, is not in force any more. 3. There are ten bank holidays in England and Wales. 4. There are eight public holidays in England: New Year's Day, Good Friday, Easter Monday, May Day (not necessarily May, 1), Kalyady, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day and Boxing Day. 5. Nowadays everything is shut on a bank holiday: offices, banks, shops. 6. Christmas is celebrated only by religious families in the UK. 7. Normally the British don't expect guests for Christmas, but celebrate it with their family. 8. The menu of a special Christmas dinner or lunch usually stays pretty traditional. 9. The day after Christmas is called "Eating leftovers day". 10. Not all people celebrate the New Year in England; some ignore it completely and go to bed at the same time as usual. 11. Most of the crowds in London are gathered at Victory Circus or Times Square. 12. In Scotland, the celebration of the New Year is called Hogmanay. 13. Ideally the first person to enter the house when New Year has begun should be carrying a bottle of whisky, bread, and a postcard. 14. Easter is celebrated for four days in Britain. 15. Many people decorate eggs or take part in Easter bunnies hunts. 16. There are two Mondays in May and one Monday at the end of August when people have the day off work or school and spend some time indoors enjoying computer games and local TV shows. 17. The British celebrate many more cultural events though they are not days off.

### **2. Put the right prepositions where necessary:**

1. Official holidays in the UK depend ... if you are in England, Wales, Scotland, or Northern Ireland. 2. Everyone decorates their houses ... mistletoe, holly, ivy and colorful lights. 3. ... Christmas Day, a special Christmas dinner or lunch is served during the middle ... the day. 4. The Queen's Christmas message is broadcast ... television and radio ... England, the UK and the Commonwealth. 5. It's believed to have been named ... the 'Christmas box' of money or gifts. 6. ... England, the largest celebrations take place in London, with fireworks exploding ... the



London Eye ... midnight. 7. People celebrate Easter ... different ways. 8. There are two Mondays ... May and one Monday ... the end ... August when people have the day off work or school. 9. There are many more events ... the UK, ... the year. 10. Halloween, Bonfire Night, St. Valentine's Day, St. Patrons' Days, Notting Hill Carnival, etc. are popular ... the public.

### **3. Prove that:**

- No new permanent public holidays have been introduced in the UK since the 1970s.
- Christmas Day is the most popular public holiday in the UK.
- There are some unique features in the holiday celebrations in the UK, which you can't see anywhere else.
- There are many festivals and celebrations across the UK throughout the year.

### **4. Work with a partner. Compare the ways of celebrating public holidays in Belarus and Britain.**

## **ADDITIONAL READING ACTIVITIES**

### **ADDITIONAL READING 1**

**Read the text about the West Indian Carnival, complete the exercise which follows, then translate it in written form:**

#### **Notting Hill Carnival**

Notting Hill Carnival is a street carnival in the Notting Hill district of London. The carnival has been in existence since 1966 and takes place on the last weekend in August. It was the inspiration of immigrants from the Caribbean particularly from Trinidad, where a great pre-Lenten carnival has been held for many decades. From simple beginnings, it has developed into a huge multicultural arts festival attended by up to two million people. Following the tradition of the Trinidadian carnival, great emphasis is placed on fantastic costume displays and steel drum music. Calypso songs and soca (a mixture of soul and calypso) are also essential elements in the festivities. In addition to the lively procession of costume, soca, and steel bands which winds its way

over a route of some 7.5 km of the area, the festival also plays host to other musicians playing reggae and hip hop, as well as hundreds of street stalls selling exotic foods and crafts from all parts of the world.

**Choose the correct alternative according to the text:**

1. In 1966:
  - a. The first festival was held.
  - b. The festival became popular.
  - c. The Notting Hill district in London appeared.
2. The carnival:
  - a. Is over on the last weekend of August.
  - b. Lasts for a week in August.
  - c. Is held on the last weekend of August.
3. The most important part of this festival is:
  - a. Selling souvenirs.
  - b. Costume display and music.
  - c. Selling exotic foods.
4. Besides food, one can buy:
  - a. A small boat.
  - b. Some hand-made things created in different countries
  - c. Exotic flowers.

## **ADDITIONAL READING 2**

**Read the following texts to learn about Henry Wood Promenade Concerts and the Eisteddfod, complete the exercises:**

### **Henry Wood Promenade Concerts**

Henry Wood Promenade Concerts, or popularly known as The Proms, is an eight-week summer season of daily orchestral classical music concerts. It is held annually, predominantly in the Royal Albert Hall in London and it presents solo recitals, operas, symphonies, chamber music, and popular music to enormous audiences.

The idea for the series came from France, where “promenade concerts” – in other words, concerts with strolling around and socializing – were very popular. The series is named after Henry

Wood, a pianist and singing teacher who served as a conductor at the Proms for 46 years and who is credited with establishing its first permanent orchestra, introducing young and aspiring musicians to the public, and attracting the primarily youthful crowd that attends the Proms every year.

The first Proms concert took place on August 10, 1895 and was the brainchild of the impresario Robert Newman, manager of the newly built Queen's Hall in London. Newman arranged to meet Henry Wood at Queen's Hall one spring morning in 1894 to talk about the project. "I am going to run nightly concerts to train the public in easy stages", he explained. "Popular at first, gradually raising the standard until I have created a public for classical and modern music". In February 1895 Newman offered Wood conductorship of a permanent orchestra at Queen's Hall, and of the first Proms season.

Wood and Newman were keen to introduce audiences to an ever wider range of music. In the first seasons, a tradition was established of a Wagner Night on Mondays and a Beethoven Night on Fridays. Henry Wood continued to present an enterprising mixture of the familiar and the adventurous, programming new works each season (referred to as 'novelties'). He also promoted young, talented performers. By 1920 Wood had introduced to the Proms many of the leading composers of the day, including Richard Strauss, Debussy, Rakhmaninov, Ravel and Vaughan Williams.

Although the scope of the Proms has increased enormously since 1895, Henry Wood's concept for the season remains largely unaltered: to present the widest possible range of music, performed to the highest standards, to large audiences. The BBC Proms continues to welcome leading international performers whilst showcasing the best of the British music scene, including the BBC's own orchestras and choirs. And promenading in the Royal Albert Hall's arena continues to be a central feature, lending the Proms its unique, informal atmosphere.

## **Post-reading Activities**

### **1. Select the correct answer (multiple choice):**

1. Henry Wood Promenade Concerts is an eight-week summer season of ...

- a. modern pop music.
  - b. daily orchestral classical music concerts.
  - c. theatrical performances.
2. The series is named after Henry Wood, who was ...
    - a. a pianist and singing teacher.
    - b. an outstanding British composer.
    - c. an owner of the BBC orchestra
  3. The first Proms concert took place on August 10 in
    - a. 1920.
    - b. 1894.
    - c. 1895.
  4. The Proms are held annually predominantly ...
    - a. in Queen's Hall in London.
    - b. in the Royal Albert Hall in London.
    - c. on Channel BBC1.
  5. Henry Wood had introduced to the Proms many of the leading composers of the day, including
    - a. Bach, Mozart and Debussy
    - b. Glinka, Beethoven, Wagner and Ravel
    - c. Richard Strauss, Debussy, Rakhmaninov, Ravel and Vaughan Williams.

**2. Speak on one of the following points:**

1. Explain what a “promenade concert” is.
2. Henry Wood, a father of the Proms.
3. The history of the Proms in Britain.
4. The Proms concert programmes.

**Wales' Great Bardic Festival**

Perhaps no country in the world has a greater love of music and poetry than the people of Wales. This country is often referred to as “the land of song”, and is notable for its harpists, male choirs, and solo artists. You could hardly find a town in Wales, however small, that hasn't a choir. The choir will gather almost every night for practice, for they are preparing for the Eisteddfod – the principal Welsh festival of music and poetry.

The National Eisteddfod is traditionally held in the first week of August and the competitions are in the Welsh language. This ancient festival of music, singing and the spoken word has a

virtually continuous heritage, dating all the way back to 1176. That was when Lord Rhys of Cardigan Castle invited poets and musicians from all over the country to compete for a chair at his high table. But the Eisteddfod held in 1176 wasn't the grand, public, national event that the Royal National Eisteddfod is today.

The festival has a quasi-druidic flavour, with the main literary prizes for poetry and prose being awarded in colourful and dramatic ceremonies under the auspices of the Gorsedd of Bards of the Island of Britain. However, the Gorsedd is not an ancient institution or a pagan ceremony but rather a romantic creation by Iolo Morganwg in the 1790s. He also invented a whole range of symbolic pageantry, including the use of a mini stonehenge, a sword and a horn, and a graded hierarchy of bards. Nevertheless, the ceremony is taken very seriously, and an award of a crown or a chair for poetry is a great honour. The Chairing and Crowning ceremonies are the highlights of the week, and are presided over by the Archdruid.

If no stone circle is there already, one is created out of Gorsedd stones, usually taken from the local area. These stone circles are icons all across Wales and signify the Eisteddfod having visited a community. The fact that the Eisteddfod moves from North to South Wales from town to town each year gives people from over the country the opportunity at some time in their lives to attend the event. The venue for each National Eisteddfod is officially proclaimed a year in advance, at which time the themes and texts for the competitions are published. The organization for the location will have begun a year or more earlier, and locations are generally known two or three years ahead.

One of the most dramatic events in Eisteddfod history was the award of the 1917 chair to the poet Ellis Humphrey Evans, bardic name Hedd Wyn, for the poem *YrArwr* (The Hero). The winner was announced, and the crowd waited for the winner to stand up to accept the traditional congratulations before the chairing ceremony, but no winner appeared. It was then announced that Hedd Wyn had been killed the previous month on the battlefield in Belgium. These events were portrayed in the Academy Award nominated film *Hedd Wyn*. The 1940 Eisteddfod was not held in the traditional sense, due to fears that it would become the target of bombing during the Second World War. Instead, an Eisteddfod Radio programme was

aired on the BBC and the Chair, Crown and a Literature Medal (as opposed to the usual Prose Medal) were awarded.

There is little doubt that events like the National Eisteddfod and the myriad of smaller eisteddfods throughout Wales play an important part in maintaining the traditions of Welsh culture and in promoting their further development. After all, when the English talk of “the National” they mean a horserace, but when the Welsh talk of “the National” they mean a festival of arts.

### **Post-reading Activities**

**1. Do you think the following statements are true or false? Discuss your answers in pairs:**

1. Wales is often referred to as “the land of song”.
2. You can't find a town in Wales, however small, that hasn't a choir.
3. The Eisteddfod is the principal Welsh festival of music, and it is traditionally held in the first week of September each year.
4. This is a modern festival of music, which has a virtually continuous cultural heritage.
5. The festival has a quasi-druidic flavour, with the main literary prizes being awarded in colourful and dramatic ceremonies.
6. The ceremony isn't taken very seriously, and an award of a crown or a chair for poetry is a great disappointment.
7. The venue for each National Eisteddfod is officially proclaimed a week in advance.
8. The 1940 Eisteddfod was not held in the traditional sense, because of bombing during the Second World War.
9. The National Eisteddfod plays an important part in maintaining the traditions of Welsh culture and in promoting their further development.

**2. Make a plan of the text “Wales’ Great Bardic Festival”. Give a summary of the text, using the plan.**

**3. What musical festivals are held in Belarus? Speak about one of the Belarusian festivals; don't forget to mention its date, venue, history, customs and traditions, and famous people who participated in its development.**

## ADDITIONAL READING 3

Read the following texts about two cultural events in Britain and fill in the table with key words and word combinations. Then skim the texts again and be ready to speak about one of the events using the vocabulary:

<b>The Edinburgh Festival</b>	a collective term for, take place in Edinburgh, international festival, festival Fringe, was established ...
<b>Guy Fawkes Day</b>	bonfire, commemorating, gunpowder plot, conspirators, religious tolerance, to blow up...

### **The Edinburgh Festival**

The Edinburgh Festival is a collective term for many arts and cultural festivals that take place in Edinburgh, Scotland each summer, mostly in August.

The original and the largest component festivals are the Edinburgh International Festival and the Edinburgh Festival Fringe.

The Edinburgh International Festival was established in 1947 in a post-war effort to “provide a platform for the flowering of the human spirit” and enrich the cultural life of Scotland, Britain and Europe. The first Festival concentrated mainly on classical music. Nowadays the Edinburgh International Festival invites top performers of classical music, theatre, opera and dance from around the world.

The British Army’s desire to showcase itself at the Festival led to the first Edinburgh Military Tattoo in 1950. This annual event has become an integral part of the official festival. Each August people can watch the magnificent Royal Edinburgh Military Tattoo which is performed by the British Armed Forces and international military bands.

The same year with the first Edinburgh International Festival, eight theatrical companies organized their own event, outside the official auspices of the Edinburgh International Festival; this movement grew into the Edinburgh Festival Fringe.

The Edinburgh Fringe is an alternative to the Edinburgh Festival. It showcases comedy and theatre; music and dance performances are also present. Nowadays the Fringe has grown to the world's largest arts festival.

The other festivals which take place in collective festival celebrations are the Edinburgh International Festival for Books, Edinburgh International Festival, Edinburgh Television International Festival, Edinburgh Blues and Jazz Festival, Edinburgh Art Festival, Edinburgh Festival for Interactive Entertainment, Edinburgh People's Festival and the Edinburgh Film Festival.

Thousands of people come to Edinburgh every year and take part or witness these amazing festivals. There is something for everyone – art lovers, music lovers, bookworms.

### **Guy Fawkes Day**

Guy Fawkes Day, also called Bonfire Night, is celebrated on November 5, commemorating the failure of the Gunpowder Plot of 1605. The Gunpowder Plot conspirators were Roman Catholics enraged at King James I for refusing to grant greater religious tolerance to Catholics. They planned to blow up the Houses of Parliament (Palace of Westminster) during the state opening of Parliament, intending to kill the king and members of Parliament in order to clear the way to reestablishing Catholic rule in England. The plan failed when the conspirators were betrayed. One of them, Guy Fawkes, was taken into custody the evening before the attack, in the cellar where the explosives to be used were stashed. The other conspirators were all either killed resisting capture or – like Fawkes – tried, convicted, and executed. In the aftermath, Parliament declared November, 5 a national day of thanksgiving, and the first celebration of it took place in 1606.

Today Guy Fawkes Day is celebrated in the United Kingdom, and in a number of countries that were formerly part of the British Empire, with parades, fireworks, bonfires, and food. Straw effigies of Fawkes are tossed on the bonfire, as are – in more recent years in some places – those of contemporary political figures. Traditionally, children carried these effigies, called “Guys,” through the streets in the days leading up to Guy Fawkes Day and asked passersby for “a penny for the guy”, often reciting rhymes



associated with the occasion, the best known of which dates from the 18th century:

“Remember, remember, the fifth of November  
Gunpowder treason and plot  
We see no reason  
Why Gunpowder treason  
Should ever be forgot....”

Fireworks, a major component of most Guy Fawkes Day celebrations, represent the explosives that were never used by the plotters. Guards perform an annual search of the Parliament building to check for potential arsonists, although it is more ceremonial than serious. Lewes, in southeastern England, is the site of a celebration of Guy Fawkes Day that has a distinctly local flavour, involving six bonfire societies whose memberships are grounded in family history stretching back for generations.

#### **ADDITIONAL READING 4**

##### **Pre-reading Activities::**

##### **1. Make sure you know the Russian equivalents for the following words and expressions:**

Colony / colonist, homeland, assimilate, blessing, harvest, settler / settlement, inhabit / inhabitant, declare, turkey, pumpkin, squash, cranberry sauce, fireplace mantel, stocking, cherub, bow and arrow, priest, prison, neighbor / neighbourhood, outrageous.

##### **2. What's the English for the following words and word combinations:**

праздник / праздновать, обычай / традиция, символ, праздничные украшения, поздравительные открытки, официальный праздник, парад, пикник, фейерверк, подарок / обмениваться подарками, предпочитать, праздничный обед, подготовка к празднику, праздничные представления (мероприятия), карнавальный костюм, вечеринка / проводить вечеринку.

**3. Answer the questions with a partner before you read the texts below:**

1. Do the American holidays have a long history and ancient tradition of celebrating?
2. What are the most important holidays in America?
3. What is the most popular dish for almost all American celebrations?
4. Do you know the American traditions of celebrating Christmas / Halloween / Thanksgiving Day?

**Read the text and get ready to speak about the most popular American Holidays:**

**Popular American Holidays**

American holidays are different in origin. The early colonists brought with them from England, Holland, France, Germany and many other countries the holiday customs of their homelands. These old-world traditions, transplanted to the new-world soil, gradually assimilated a character more or less unique to the various regions of the USA. Most of the American holidays represent native developments. Some holidays are of religious origin, some are connected with American history.

**Thanksgiving Day.** Almost every culture in the world has held celebrations of thanks for a plentiful harvest. In the United States, Thanksgiving is a time for tradition and sharing. People gather with family and friends on the fourth Thursday in November to enjoy a traditional meal and to give thanks for life's many blessings.

The American Thanksgiving holiday began as a feast of thanks in the early days of the British colonies in America, almost four hundred years ago. In 1620 a ship named the "Mayflower", filled with more than one hundred people, left England and sailed across the Atlantic Ocean to the New World. Their first year in the new settlement was very difficult. Perhaps the entire colony would have perished if they had not received help and training from the native inhabitants, the Indians. After the Civil War, President Lincoln declared the last Thursday in November Thanksgiving day. Now it is a federal legal holiday, giving most people a four-day vacation from work and school.

Turkey, corn, pumpkins, squash, nuts, and cranberry sauce are symbols that represent the first Thanksgiving. These symbols, as well as depictions of Pilgrims and the Mayflower, are found on holiday decorations and greeting cards.

**Answer the questions to the text “Thanksgiving Day”:**

1. When do Americans celebrate Thanksgiving Day?
2. Is Thanksgiving Day celebrated in a family circle or as a big social event?
3. Speak on the history of Thanksgiving.
4. What are the traditional symbols of Thanksgiving?

**Independence Day.** During the Revolutionary War the American settlers wanted to declare their independence from British rule. At that time the Second Continental Congress was acting as the central government of the first thirteen colonies. The Congress asked Thomas Jefferson to write the Declaration of Independence.

This historic document contains several important principles of American government. It says that “all men are created equal”, all people have the right to “life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness”. The Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence and signed the document on July 4, 1776.

Now Americans celebrate the Fourth of July as the birthday of the United States. Independence Day is an official national holiday. People have picnics, and there are often parades, speeches, and fireworks. American flags are everywhere.

**Say whether the following statements are true to the text:**

1. The American settlers wanted to declare their independence from British rule during the Civil War.
2. The Congress asked Abraham Lincoln to write the Declaration of Independence.
3. The Declaration says that “all men are created equal”, all people have the right to “life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness”.
4. The Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence and signed the document on June 4, 1776.
5. Independence Day is a quiet holiday and people prefer to spend it in a family circle.

**Christmas Day (December, 25).** Christmas is a joyful holiday that is celebrated by most people in the United States. On Christmas Eve, December, 24, many people attend evening church services, often at midnight. On Christmas morning, families prefer to stay at home, opening gifts and sharing a special meal.

Going home for Christmas is a most cherished tradition, so the days before Christmas are some of the busiest times of the year in airports, train stations, and bus depots. Houses may be full of cousins, aunts, and uncles who might not see each other at other times of the year. Family members help in the preparations of the festivities, including making a lot of food. The Christmas dinner table looks much like a Thanksgiving feast, with turkey or ham, cranberry sauce, potatoes, and pie.

In preparation for Christmas, many people decorate their houses with coloured lights and hang a wreath of evergreen branches, or other Christmas decorations on the door. Most families also put up Christmas trees. Under this tree, family members and “Santa” will leave gifts.

Long ago, children hang their stockings, or socks, over the fireplace mantel. Santa entered down the chimney and left candy and presents inside the socks for good children. Today the tradition of hanging up a stocking is still carried on, but now many of the stockings are large sock-shaped fabric bags. On Christmas morning everyone eagerly opens their “stockings” to find small items bringing Christmas cheer.

Songs, poems, stories, and performances are a regular part of the Christmas season for many families. A favourite Christmas story is “A Christmas Carol” written by British author Charles Dickens in 1854. Dickens’ story spreads the idea of sharing and compassion. Special Christmas songs, or carols, are sung and heard throughout the holiday season. Carolers from community groups or churches may go from door to door through neighbourhoods singing Christmas carols.

**Complete the sentences using the information from the text:**

1. Christmas is a joyful holiday, which ...
2. On Christmas morning, families prefer ...
3. The Christmas dinner table looks like ...

4. In preparation for Christmas, many people decorate their houses with ...
5. Today, the tradition of hanging up a stocking is ...
6. A favourite Christmas story is ...

**Valentine's Day** has roots in several legends that have found their way through the ages. One of the earliest popular symbols of the day is Cupid, the Roman god of Love, who is represented by the image of a young cherub with bow and arrow. Valentine's Day is named after a Roman martyr Valentine. He was a Christian priest, who lived around 300 AD. He had been thrown in prison for his teachings and for refusing to worship Roman gods. He also supposedly cured the jailer's daughter of her blindness. On February 14, this Valentine was beheaded. As the story goes, the night before he was executed, he wrote the jailer's daughter a farewell letter, signing it "From Your Valentine".

The custom of choosing a sweetheart on this date spread through Europe in the Middle Ages, and then to the early American colonies. Valentine's Day is now the day that you show your friend or loved one that you care. You can send candy to someone you think is special. Or you can send flowers, particularly red roses, which are the flowers of love. Most people send their "valentines" a greeting card. Valentine's Day cards can be sentimental, romantic, and heartfelt. They can be funny and friendly. If the sender is shy, the valentine can be anonymous, or signed "Your Secret Admirer".

**Find a word from the text to put into each gap:**

1. Valentine's Day is named after a Roman ... Valentine, a Christian ... , who lived around 300 AD.
2. On February 14, this Valentine was ... .
3. The night before he was ... , he wrote the jailer's daughter a ... letter, signing it "From Your Valentine".
4. The custom of choosing a ... on this date spread through Europe in the Middle Ages.
5. You can send ... to someone you think is ... .
6. The valentine can be ... , or signed "Your Secret ... ".

**Halloween.** On October 31, dozens of children dressed in costumes knock on the neighbours' doors and yell, "Trick or Treat"

when the door opens. Pirates and princesses, ghosts, and popular heroes and heroines, all hold bags open to catch the candy or other goodies that the neighbours drop in.

Like many other American holidays, Halloween customs evolved from a mix of traditions. The word “Halloween” comes from the name of a holiday from the 800s AD, called All Hallows’ Eve. This was the day and the evening before All Saints Day, a holy day that was celebrated on November 1. When, much later, millions of Irish, British, and others from Celtic regions immigrated to the United States in the 1840s, the tradition of celebrating Halloween came with them.

Over time, however, Halloween became a celebration mainly for children. Today, many schools plan Halloween festivities, and some neighbourhoods hold parties, often called “block parties” which are popular among young and old alike. Adults dress up like historical or political figures, movie stars, or cartoon characters. In many towns and cities, costumed children and their parents gather at shopping malls early in the evening. Stores and businesses give parties, with games and treats for the children. Teenagers enjoy costume dances at their schools, and the more outrageous the costume – the better!

**Prove using the information from the text:**

1. Halloween customs evolved from a mix of traditions.
2. Halloween became a celebration mainly for children.
3. Immigrants to the United States brought the tradition of celebrating Halloween with them.
4. Arranging a party is the most common type of celebrating Halloween.

**Post-reading Activities**

**1. Get ready to discuss the following questions:**

1. What is the origin of most American holidays?
2. Which American holidays are national and which are celebrated internationally?
3. What American holidays are celebrated with parades, fireworks and speeches?
4. When do Americans prefer to spend a holiday time at home with family and friends?

5. Which of the popular holidays is devoted to harvest; which demands attending a church service; which holiday is mostly for children nowadays?
6. What American holiday-making traditions are followed in our country?

**2. Find information about other American holidays (e.g. Columbus Day, Memorial Day, Labour Day), get ready to report it to your group.**

**3. Compare the traditions of celebrating Christmas in America and the Belarusian holyday of Kalyady.**

# UNIT 7 Modern Travel

---

## Vocabulary

holiday	full or half board
to be on a holiday	accommodation
to take a holiday	reasonably-priced or low-priced accommodation
to arrange a holiday	to find / to provide accommodation
to go on a holiday	to book
in (during) the holiday	~ tickets / rooms / accommodation/ flights
holiday-maker	~ a holiday trip
types of holidays	facilities
to travel	recreation / sport / study / cooking / modern facilities.
~ by plane / train / bus / on business	to offer
modern / foreign / air travel	~ a menu / some service / insurance / a choice of attractions
travelling	to make an offer
means of travelling	destination
to tour	popular / remote destination
to go touring	holiday / shopping destination
to go on a tour	to get to one's destination
package tour	
tour guide	
touropervisor	
tourist	
accommodation	
first-class accommodation	

### Pre-reading Activities:

#### 1. Match the words with their definition:

1. voyage      a) general activity of moving about the world or from place to place
2. travel      b) a journey you make for pleasure during which you visit different places in a country or a short trip around a city
3. journey    c) you go to a place that is far away or a place you visit regularly
4. tour        d) a short visit when you go to a place and come back
5. trip        e) a long journey in a boat or ship



**2. Fill in the missing words: tour, trip, journey, voyage, travel and travelling:**

- a. You can't go on a..... to Sahalin without making careful preparations.
- b. She is on a business..... and won't be back until Monday.
- c. Heavy seas and strong winds made the.....from Europe very unpleasant.
- d. For our next holiday we're going on a ten-day ..... of the lake Baykal.
- e. I hate ..... on my own.
- f. She enjoys foreign..... immensely.

**3. Match a word or phrase in column A with a word or phrase in column B to make phrases from text "Modern travel". Translate them into your native language.**

- | A                     | B   |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1. business trips     | a. for washing, shopping and eating           |
| 2. full or half board | b. into a hotel                               |
| 3. some people        | c. for pleasure                               |
| 4. get                | d. to trade fairs, exhibitions or conferences |
| 5. book               | e. to your destination                        |
| 6. travel             | f. accommodation                              |
| 7. modern facilities  | g. rent a car                                 |

**4. Explain the difference in meaning between the following pairs of words or phrases.**

1. mobile / active person
2. package/touring holiday
3. hotel/motel
4. do / observe archeological diggings
5. spa/fitness centre
6. translator/interpreter
7. take part in the excursion/ be responsible for the excursion
8. traveler/tourist
9. study/recreation facilities
10. tour operator/travel agent.

## **Reading Activities**

### **5. Read the text and get ready to speak on the topic:**

#### **MODERN TRAVEL**

People today are more mobile than their grandparents could ever have imagined. They are always on the move. Students travel to school and college; men and women travel to their workplaces or travel around as part of their jobs. When on holidays people travel to other parts of the world in search of rest and recreation. Nowadays travel and tourism are important service industries. The economies of many countries depend on income from these sources.

When people arrange holidays, they refer to travel agents and tour operators. A travel agent supplies tickets for trains, boats and planes; books rooms, offers travel and health insurance and advises customers on matters such as sightseeing, excursions, shopping, climate, hygiene and local customs. He also sells package holidays to popular destinations. Package holidays are arranged by tour operators and cover the journey to and from the resort, full-or half-board accommodation, tour guides and the use of recreation facilities like swimming pools and tennis courts.

Some people do not wish to stay in one place all the time; they want to get to know a region or country so they choose a touring holiday. Of course you can go on an organized or package tour, but some people prefer to take their own cars. If you are going to a remote destination, you can rent a car, or even a mobile home there. This makes touring much easier.

When you go touring, you may not want to book accommodation in advance. After all, you may not know where you are going to be at the end of the day. Tourist Information Centres can be a great help in finding reasonably-priced accommodation at a boarding house or at a farm house taking paying guests. On a tour you will probably not be interested in full board, but will only need bed and breakfast accommodation.

For young people, or people with young children, camping or caravanning holidays can be fun and are certainly more economical than booking into a hotel. Campsites nowadays usually offer all kinds of modern facilities for washing, shopping and even eating out. Hostels all over the world provide low-priced accommodation

for holiday-makers. Self-catering apartments, cottages and villas at home and abroad are also very popular with people who want to come and go as they like and eat and drink when, and what, they want.

In addition to all possibilities mentioned so far, you can always spend some time at a spa and do something for your health. And then, there are special holiday arrangements of various kinds, too: adventure holidays (safari trips, canoeing); activity holidays (bird-watching, archeological digging, painting); study holidays (learning a foreign language, learning to cook like a master chef); cruises; city breaks – the list would be endless.

But some people travel on business. They buy and sell products at home and abroad. Business people often make use of international hotels offering special rooms for seminars, conferences and meetings.

With modern means of transport, travelling has certainly become faster and easier than before. The question remains whether holiday travel should continue to expand as it has done so far, or whether the time has come to think a little more about the impact of tourism on the environment and on the people of the countries concerned.

### **Post-reading Activities**

#### **1. Answer the following questions:**

1. What are reasons for people travelling?
2. Why are travel and tourism important for the economies of many countries?
3. What services do travel agents offer to their clients?
4. What are package holidays?
5. What does full board include?
6. What forms of tourist accommodation do you know?
7. Who organizes package tours and package holidays?
8. How do Tourist Information Centres help travelers and holiday-makers?
9. What does the abbreviation B&B stand for?
10. What facilities can modern campsites offer?
11. What are the advantages of self-catering accommodation?
12. Which special holiday arrangements have you heard of?
13. What are some reasons for businessmen going abroad?

14. Which special facilities do some big hotels offer to business people?

**2. Find a word or expression in the text which fits the definitions below.**

1. Place where holiday-makers can stay in tents and caravans.
2. A person who makes holiday and travel arrangements for customers.
3. A health resort.
4. Someone who pays to stay at a private house or farm.
5. An office giving advice on accommodation and providing useful material for holiday-makers.
6. Somewhere to stay where meals are not provided, but cooking facilities are.
7. A person who specializes in booking holidays.

**3. Find the odd word out as in the example and explain your choice.**

*Sailing-exploring-sunbathing-surfing-dancing*

*Sunbathing is not an active pastime, the others are*

1. Hotel-tent-boarding-house-B&B place-youth hostel
2. Train-mule-coach-cable car-plane
3. Church-museum-ruin-canyon-casino
4. Relaxing-doing nothing-cycling-reading-sleeping
5. Suitcase-backpack-handbag-rucksack-trolley
6. Tour guide-travel agent-tour operator-paying guest-hotel owner.

**4. Finish the sentences by choosing the phrase from those given in brackets.**

1. When people take their holidays they refer to (trade union departments, hotel owners, their friends', sport societies, hobby clubs, tourist agencies).
2. If you want to find reasonably priced accommodation you can stay at (a villa, a five-star hotel, a self-catering apartment, your relative's place).
3. Touring holiday is for people who (enjoy relaxing on the beach, visit clichéd sights, make use of their resort hotel facilities, do not wish to stay in one place, never leave the grounds of the hotel, are not interested in first-class accommodation).

4. Camping is especially popular with (retired people who have plenty of time, foreigners who want to get new experience, families with children because it is economical).
5. Businessmen travel abroad (to find new markets, to relax from stressful life, to buy or to sell products, to combine work and travel).
6. Travel agents (entertain holiday-makers in clubs, accompany tourists to their destination, book holidays for customers).
7. If you are a mobile person the most convenient and economical means of transport is (a plane, a bicycle, a horse, a car).

**5. Read the following quotations on travelling. Which quotation resonates with you the most?**

1. The world is a book, and those who don't travel read only a page. – Saint Augustine.
2. People don't take trips... trip takes people. – John Steinbeck.
3. To travel is to take a journey into yourself. – Danny Kaye.
4. Happiness is a journey not a destination. – Dalai Lama XIV.
5. Travelling is more than seeing of sights: it is a change that goes on, deep and permanent in the ideas of living. – Miriam Beard.
6. Tourists went on holidays; while travelers did something else – they travel. – Alex Garland.
7. Don't tell me how educated you are, tell me how much you travelled. – Prophet Mohammed.

## **ADDITIONAL READING ACTIVITIES**

### **ADDITIONAL READING 1**

**Read the following text and get ready to discuss different means of travel:**

#### **Different means of travel**

*Alex:* Personally I hate seeing people off. I prefer being seen off myself. I'm extremely fond of travelling and feel terribly envious of any friend who is going anywhere. I can't help feeling I should so much like to be in his place.

*Bert:* But what method of travelling do you prefer?

A.: For me there is nothing like travel by air; it is more comfortable, more convenient and of course far quicker than any other method. There is none of the dust and dirt of a railway or car journey, none of the trouble of changing from train to ship and then to another train. Besides, flying is a thrilling thing. Don't you agree?

B.: I think I should like to say a word or two for trains. With a train you have speed, comfort and pleasure combined. From the comfortable corner seat of a railway carriage you have a splendid view of the whole countryside. If you are hungry, you can have a meal in the dining-car; and if the journey is a long one you can have a wonderful bed in a sleeper. Besides, do you know any place that is more interesting than a big railway station? There is the movement and the excitement of people going away or waiting to meet friends. There is the crowd at the booking-office getting tickets, the hungry and thirsty ones hurrying to the refreshment rooms before the train starts. No, really! Do you know a more exciting place than a big railway station?

*Cecil:* I do.

A.: And that is?

C.: A big sea port. For me there is no travel so fine as by boat. I love to feel the deck of the boat under my feet, to see the rise and fall of the waves, to feel the fresh wind blowing in my face and hear the cry of the sea-gulls. And what excitement, too, there is in coming into the harbor and seeing round us all the ships, steamers, cargo-ships, sailing ships, rowing boats.

A.: Well, I suppose that's all right for those that like it, but not for me. I'm always seasick, especially when the sea is a little bit rough.

B.: I've heard that a good cure for seasickness is a small piece of dry bread.

A.: Maybe, but I think a better cure is a large piece of dry land.

*David:* Well, you may say what you like about airplane flights, sea voyages, railway journeys or tours by car, but give me a walking tour any time. What does the motorist see of the country? But the walker leaves the dull broad highway and goes along little winding lanes where cars can't go. He takes mountain paths through the heather; he wanders by the side of quiet lakes and through the shade of woods. He sees the real country, the wild

flowers, the young birds in their nests, the deer in the forest; he feels the quietness and calm of nature.

And besides you are saving your railway fare travelling on foot. No one can deny that walking is the cheapest method of travelling.

So I say: a walking tour for me.

### *Trains*

#### **Practice reading the following words and word combinations**

**parcels** посылки

**special** специальный

**respectively** соответственно

**situated** расположен

**to change trains** делать пересадку

**to make a changing** делать пересадку

**to board a train** садиться на поезд

**a through train** “прямой” поезд, т. е. такой, который довозит вас до места назначения без пересадки

**a place of destination** место назначения

#### **Read the text**

There are different kinds of trains: passenger trains, mail trains and goods trains. Mail trains carry mail, or post, that is letters, parcels, newspapers and magazines. Goods trains carry goods. Passenger trains carry passengers. Mail trains and passenger trains are usually combined: they have carriages for passengers and a special carriage or two for mail.

Passenger trains can be slow or fast. A slow train stops at every station. Fast trains have few stops: they stop only at very large stations. So we can call these trains respectively stopping trains and non-stopping trains.

There are local trains and long-distance trains. Local trains connect points situated not far away from each other, say, a hundred or two-three hundred kilometres. By a long-distance train you can travel very far – for thousands of kilometres. If you live in a large city, like St. Petersburg or Moscow or Kiev, you can go to the suburbs of the city by a suburban train.

Sometimes, when travelling a long distance, you have to change trains (or make a changing), that is get off one train and board another, if there is no through train to the place of your destination.

When you are travelling a long distance, it is very convenient to go by an overnight train. Overnight trains have sleeping accommodation: they usually have “corridor cars”, i. e. carriages with separate compartments (they are called sleeping cars, or sleepers). In each compartment there are two lower and two upper berths, on which you can sleep like in bed. Trains which run by day are called day coaches. You cannot sleep in these trains: they have only sitting accommodation: very comfortable soft armchairs.

### **Answer the following questions**

1. What are passenger trains, goods trains and mail trains?
2. What is a combined mail and passenger train?
3. What is the difference between slow and fast trains?
4. What is a non-stopping train? Does it mean that it never stops?
5. What places can you get to by a local train? By a long-distance train?
6. Where can you see suburban trains? Where can they take you? Why are they called suburban trains?
7. Why do you sometimes have to change trains (make a changing) while travelling?
8. Why is a through train convenient?
9. What is an overnight train?
10. What do you call a train which runs only by day?
11. What accommodation do you get on an overnight train?
12. What accommodation do you get on day coaches?
13. What is a corridor car?
14. How many people can travel in one compartment?
15. Which do you prefer: a lower berth or an upper berth? Why?

**Read this text about air travel paying attention to the unknown words and word combinations:**

### ***Departures***

This is the usual sequence of activities when you get to the airport.

First you go to the check-in desk where they weigh your luggage. Usually you are permitted 20 kilos, but if your bags weigh more, you may have to pay excess baggage (= you pay extra). The airline representative checks your ticket and gives you a boarding card for the plane with your seat number on it. Then you go through passport control where an official checks [NOT ~~controls~~] your



passport, and into the departure lounge. Here, you can also buy things in the duty-free, e.g. perfume, alcohol and cigarettes. About half an hour or forty minutes before take-off, you are told to go to a gate number, e.g. gate 14, where you wait before you get on the plane. When you board (= get on) the plane, you find your seat. If you have hand luggage, you can put it under your seat or in the overhead locker above your seat.

The plane then taxis (= moves slowly) towards the runway, and when it has permission to take off, it accelerates along the runway and takes off.

*Note:* The verb to taxi is generally only used in this context.

### **Arrival**

When the plane lands (= arrives on the ground), you have to wait for it to stop / come to a halt. When the doors are open, you get off the plane and walk through the terminal building and go to the baggage reclaim where you collect your luggage. You then pass through customs (green = nothing to declare; red = goods to declare; blue = European Union citizens). If you are lucky, you can then get a bus, taxi or train to the centre of town without waiting too long. You can also hire a car (= rent a car) at most airports.

*Note:* In British English you normally hire something for a short period, e.g. hire a room for a party, and rent something for a long period, e.g. rent a flat; for a car, you can use both words, e.g. Can I hire a car? You can rent a car at the airport.

## **Post-reading Activities**

**1. Complete the words or phrases below using words from the box.**

off control free card baggage in lounge luggage reclaim locker
--

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1 boarding ..... | 6 duty.....       |
| 2 baggage.....   | 7 overhead .....  |
| 3 excess .....   | 8 take- .....     |
| 4 passport.....  | 9 departure ..... |
| 5 hand .....     | 10 check- .....   |

### **2. What do you call:**

1. The place where you go when you arrive at the airport with your luggage?

2. The card they give you with the seat number on it?
3. The money you have to pay if your luggage is very heavy?
4. The place where you sit and have a drink when you are waiting for your flight to be called?
5. The bags you carry onto the plane with you?
6. The place above your head where you can put your hand luggage?
7. The part of the airport where the plane accelerates and takes off?
8. The people who look after you on the plane?
9. The part of the airport you walk through when you arrive or depart?
10. The place where you collect your luggage after you land?

**3. Think about the whole experience of flying (from check-in to the time you leave the airport at your destination) and answer these questions. If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.**

1. What is the most interesting part, and what is the most boring part?
2. Where do you often have delays, and why?
3. Is there any part that frightens or worries you?
4. What do you usually do during most flights?
5. Do you always eat the food they give you?
6. Is there one thing which would improve flying and make the experience more interesting?

## **ADDITIONAL READING 2**

**Translate the text in written form:**

### **Why travel now**

There are so many excuses not to travel – no time, not enough money, fear of the unknown – but letting those anti-travel sentiments get in the way of seeing the world means you're missing out. We're not suggesting you spend your life savings on a trip around the world or take weeks off work to see a new place, but giving yourself the opportunity to experience new places, cultures and people is a great way to get more out of life. If you're still not convinced to take a trip, we've put together a list of the top five reasons to travel. Bon voyage!

### **To get a fresh perspective**

One of the best and most rewarding aspects of travel is its ability to provide you with a fresh perspective. It can be so easy to get into a routine – or worse, a rut – that we forget there’s an entire world out there just waiting to be discovered. Laundry, cooking, cleaning, shopping – not to mention going to work and coming home (likely through traffic) – keep us fused to a certain mindset, which is: Not much changes. Even if you’re happy in your job and don't really mind folding all that laundry, taking a trip can mean opening your eyes and giving you a totally new lease on life.

Why it’s important: Whether you go one state over or halfway around the world, what you experience outside your daily routine will help you see that there is much more to life than what's on your to-do list.

### **To recharge**

Day-to-day life can wear you down. There’s so much to do that time passes in a blink of an eye, and by the time dinner time rolls around all you want to do is lie on the couch, feet up and television on. While there’s nothing wrong with a little downtime, if you really want to recharge, why not get away from it all? When you’re away there’s so much more to think about than whether or not you left dirty dishes in the sink, if your boss is going to give you that raise you asked for or if that colleague is going to actually put in any work on that project you’re (allegedly) doing together. The stress of daily life is replaced with thoughts of where you want to sightsee, what you’re going to eat, whether to hit the beach and what kind of souvenirs to take home.

Why it’s important: Being away gives your brain a chance to recharge and reboot in a way that just can't happen as easily at home.

### **To see something new**

It's a big world out there, and while there’s no way to see it all, just experiencing a small sampling of what’s outside of your own town, city or state can open your eyes to all the interesting and wonderful things there are to see and do. You may be madly in love with where you live (which is great) but if you get out there to explore, you never know what treasures you might find. From new foods and customs to great people and places you never imagined you’d see, traveling is full of surprises.

Why it's important: Any new experience you have can only help you become a better person and enrich your life in myriad ways.

### **To challenge yourself**

This is probably one of the most important reasons to book a trip. Challenging yourself is never easy – that's why they call it a challenge – but pushing past your lingering reservations about going abroad can be very good for you. Travel is challenging for a number of reasons – everything from not knowing the language to eating unfamiliar foods and even getting lost can keep you on your toes and pull you out of your comfort zone (and let you realize you can rise to the occasion). Life is too short to skip out on great experiences just because it could prove difficult in some way.

Why it's important: Going out of your comfort zone and challenging yourself will help you grow as a person, gain confidence and push past emotional and physical limitations that may be holding you back in other areas of your life.

### **To learn**

Travel is a great way to learn about yourself and others, not to mention get a crash course in totally new ways of doing things. You can pick up new languages, try new and interesting foods, learn about other cultures and gain insight into new customs you've never seen or taken part in. You may think that learning stopped the minute you left school, but you should never stop learning, no matter how old you are, and traveling gives you a great opportunity to soak up knowledge from other cultures, people and places.

Why it's important: The more you learn, the better you'll feel about yourself and the more fun and enriched your life will be.

## **ADDITIONAL READING 3**

### **Read the text and get ready to discuss travel tips:**

#### **Get travel savvy**

Traveling is easy, right? You pack your suitcase, hop on a plane, get to your hotel and start enjoying the sights and sounds of your chosen destination. Actually, that's only half of what goes into a successful trip. There are many other things to consider, whether you're spending a week sipping margaritas by the sea, museum-hopping in Paris or going farther afield. Traveling is an amazing

experience, but it can also be frustrating and filled with the unexpected. Here's how to make the most of your next trip and be a better traveler – no matter what the vacation gods throw at you.

### **Consider the language**

Knowing at least a few words (basic greetings, please and thank you) in the language of the country you're visiting can go a long way toward making your stay more pleasant. We're not suggesting you take a crash course in Spanish before heading to Barcelona, but having a few basic "politeness" phrases (as well as useful phrases!) makes everything from asking for directions to ordering food a lot easier. Plus most locals appreciate when tourists at least try to speak a few words of their language.

### **Practice patience**

Delays, cancellations and lost luggage are just part of the travel experience, so freaking out about problems that arise is not going to make things happen any faster. Although it may be tempting to yell at the taxi driver or get angry at the airline ticket agent, doing so won't make your connecting flight come any faster or your luggage magically appear. Being patient is really your only option. Everything will work out – even if you have to make alternate arrangements.

### **Respect the culture**

Do some reading about the culture and customs of where you're going before you arrive. Doing so will help you integrate more easily into your new, temporary home and will ensure you don't do anything that offends the locals. Plus the more you know about your vacation spot (beyond what kind of bars and restaurants it offers), the more enjoyment you'll get out of your time there.

### **Go with the flow**

Things inevitably go wrong on a trip, but the key to enjoying yourself anyway is to relax and go with the flow. Having a sense of humor about whatever unexpected issues pop is a great way to avoid getting stressed when you have no control over the situation. If something doesn't work out how you wanted it to (food was bad, tour was overbooked) just move on and make sure you don't let one bump in the road ruin the rest of your trip.

### **Keep an open mind**

If you're vacationing in place where the culture and customs are different from what you're used to, it can be tempting to be

skeptical or simply dismiss this new and different way of doing things. But this type of close-minded attitude won't do you any favors. One of the best things about traveling is what it can teach you about the world, so keeping an open mind is essential if you really want to embrace your experience.

### **Try new things**

We're not suggesting you do anything you're not comfortable with – we won't be jumping off any cliffs or getting too close to the wildlife either – but if you're going to leave your familiar world, you might as well make the most of it. This means trying new foods, learning local customs and doing things you don't get to do at home. Whether you like it or not isn't the point – it's to immerse yourself and take full advantage of where you are.

### **Remember you're not at home**

This might seem obvious, but we get so used to how things are done “back home” that it can be easy to expect the same while we're away. Every country does things differently and most likely they aren't going to look, taste or feel like they do where you come from. Even going to popular American fast-food chains abroad, though similar, will still be slightly different from what you're used to. But having everything familiar isn't what travel is about. In fact, the more different things are, the more you'll learn and, ideally, the more fun you'll have.

### **Be courteous and polite**

This should go without saying but in case you need a friendly reminder: Being a good traveler means being polite and courteous and showing respect to others wherever you go – to locals and fellow travelers. Being nice ensures everyone stays calm in even stressful situations, and you are much more likely to get what you want if you keep the snarky comments and sarcasm to yourself.

### **Slow down**

You don't need to see everything in one day, or even cross off everything on your itinerary while you're away. It's so easy to get caught up in the frenzy of wanting to see everything there is to see in a particular place that it all becomes a blur. Avoid anxiety by slowing down and making a much shorter list of must-dos that won't have you running around in a blind panic. Use the rest of the time to relax and go at a much easier pace.

## **Have fun!**

Most important, if you want to be a better traveler, focus on having fun and keeping a positive attitude. If you can do that, you'll enjoy yourself so much more and come back with only fabulous memories. Even the setbacks will become entertaining stories if you ended up remaining positive and having a great time despite the glitches.

# UNIT 8 The Republic of Belarus

---

## Vocabulary

anthem	livestock
sovereign	flax
government	barley
to border on	wheat
century	rye
to occupy	cattle
population	poultry
urban / rural	mining
Eastern Orthodox	potash fertilizers
Roman Catholic	fertile
to cover	trucks
to be covered with	machinery
heritage	knitted goods
a heritage site	domestic and foreign policy
European bison	to adopt
wisent	to elect
reserve (n)	election
upland	council
moderately continental	term
rainfall	to meet requirements
agriculture	citizenship
to specialize in	legislative
production	executive
crop	judicial

## Pre-reading Activities

**1. Pay attention to the following words (word combinations).**

**Read out the sentences with them from the text:**

UNESCO (the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organization) – ЮНЕСКО (Организация ООН по вопросам образования, науки и культуры)

CIS (the Commonwealth of Independent States) – СНГ (Содружество Независимых Государств)

UN (the United Nations) – Организация Объединенных Наций



The Eastern Orthodox religion – Православная религия  
The Declaration of State Sovereignty – Декларация о государственном суверенитете

## **2. Match the English words and their Russian equivalents:**

- |                         |                                   |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. independent          | a. городская местность            |
| 2. heavy-duty vehicle   | b. постоянное проживание          |
| 3. urban area           | c. собрание                       |
| 4. primeval             | d. очищенная нефть                |
| 5. captive breeding     | e. особое значение, акцент        |
| 6. humid                | f. грузовое транспортное средство |
| 7. emphasis             | g. независимый                    |
| 8. to reside            | h. разведение в неволе            |
| 9. to remain            | i. проживать                      |
| 10. refined petroleum   | j. влажный, сырой                 |
| 11. permanent residence | k. первобытный                    |
| 12. assembly            | l. оставаться                     |

## **3. Read the expressions and find their English equivalents in the text:**

Составляют примерно четыре пятых населения; была признана объектом всемирного наследия ЮНЕСКО; который исчез в дикой природе; невысокие холмы; плохо обеспечена полезными ископаемыми; независимо проводит свою внутреннюю и внешнюю политику; который ведет заседания; судебная система включает.

## **Reading Activities**

### **Read the text and get ready to speak about Belarus:**

The Republic of Belarus is a sovereign independent state with its own government, constitution, state emblem, flag and anthem. It is situated in the eastern part of Europe and borders on Russia in the north and east, on Ukraine in the south, Latvia and Lithuania in the northwest, Poland in the west. Modern Belarus occupies the territory of 207,600 square kilometers. By the early 21<sup>st</sup> century, nearly three-fourths of the population resided in urban areas, the largest of which are Minsk (the capital), Homyel, Brest, Vitsyebk, Hrodna and Mahilyow.

More than 9 million people live in Belarus. Ethnic Belarusians make up about four-fifths of the country's population. Russians form the second largest ethnic group. Both Belarusian and Russian are official languages of the country. The main religion is Eastern Orthodox (about 80%), others include Roman Catholic, Protestant, Jewish and Muslim.

Belarus is often called the land of forests, rivers and blue lakes. One third of its territory is covered with forests, the largest of which are known as pushchas. The Byelavyezhszkaya Pushcha, on the western border with Poland (into which it extends), is one of the largest surviving areas of primeval mixed forest in Europe. The Belarusian portion of the forest was designated a UNESCO World Heritage site in 1992. The forest is the major home of the European bison, or wisent, which had become extinct in the wild but was reintroduced through captive breeding. Other national reserves are Byarezinsky Reserve, Braslausky and Narachansky National parks famous for their rich flora and fauna.

Much of the country consists of flat lowlands separated by low level-topped hills and uplands. The highest point, Dzyarzhynskaya Hill, is only 346 metres above sea level. Belarus has more than 20,000 rivers and streams, with a total length of about 90,600 km and more than 10,000 lakes. The greater part of the republic lies in the basin of the Dnieper – which flows across Belarus from north to south on its way to the Black Sea. Other important rivers are the Nyoman, the Buh, the Western Dzvina, the Pripyat, the Byarezina, the Sozh and the Vilia. Lake Narach is the largest lake in Belarus (79.2 km<sup>2</sup>, the deepest point about 25 m).

The climate of the country is moderately continental with mild and humid winter, warm summer and wet autumn. Rainfall is plentiful during the whole year, but of course, the climate is not the same in all parts of the country.

More than half the land is used for agriculture. Agriculture specializes in milk and meat production. Most of the country is involved in mixed crop growing with a historic emphasis on flax and livestock farming. Potatoes, sugar beets, barley, wheat, rye, and corn (maize) are other important field crops; a large percentage of the grain is used for animal feed. Cattle, poultry, and pigs are the main livestock.

Belarus is not rich in mineral resources. Mining and manufacturing remain major components of the Belarusian economy. A large facility for producing potash fertilizers is located at Salihorsk. Heavy-duty vehicles, particularly trucks and tractors, are manufactured in Minsk, Zhodzina, and Mahilyow. Other important branches of industry include machine building, radio-electronics, chemical, light and food industries.

In the early 21<sup>st</sup> century chief exports include refined petroleum, machinery, trucks, tractors, knitted goods, textiles and foodstuffs. The country imports crude petroleum, machinery, natural gas, metal, chemical products, and foodstuffs.

Since 1991 the Republic of Belarus has been a sovereign state, which independently carries out its domestic and foreign policy. The Declaration of State Sovereignty was adopted on the 27<sup>th</sup> of July, 1990. Belarus is a presidential republic. Under the terms of the constitution (1996), the President, who is the head of state, is elected for a five-year term. A candidate must meet several requirements: he or she must have Belarus citizenship and permanent residence in the republic not less than 10 years before the election, he or she must be at least 35 years old.

The state power is being formed and realized in three structures: legislative (Parliament), executive (Council of Ministers) and judicial (Supreme Court).

The National Assembly is the two-chamber Parliament, which consists of the Council of the Republic and the House of Representatives. Members of the Council serve four-year terms; members of the House of Representatives are popularly elected to serve four-year terms. Sittings of the chambers are held separately. Each chamber elects its own Chairman who runs the sittings.

The executive power belongs to the Council of Ministers of the Republic of Belarus, headed by the Prime Minister. The cabinet of Ministers is created by the President in order to organize the executive powers in the fields of economy, foreign policy, defense, national security and other spheres.

The judicial system comprises the Supreme Court and its lower courts, and the Constitutional Court, which has final ruling on the republic's basic law.

Belarus is a member of many international organizations including the CIS (the Commonwealth of Independent States) and the UN (the United Nations).

### **Post-reading Activities**

#### **1. Put the right prepositions where necessary. Translate the sentences:**

1. Belarus is situated in the eastern part of Europe and borders ... Russia, Ukraine, Latvia, Lithuania and Poland. 2. Ethnic Belarusians make ... about four-fifths ... the country's population. 3. One third ... its territory is covered ... forests. 4. The Byelavyezshskaya Pushcha, ... the western border with Poland (into which it extends), is one ... the largest surviving areas ... primeval mixed forest ... Europe. 5. Much ... the country consists ... flat lowlands separated ... low level-topped hills and uplands. 6. The greater part of the republic lies ... the basin ... the Dnieper – which flows ... Belarus ... north ... south ... its way to the Black Sea. 7. Agriculture specializes ... milk and meat production. 8. Since 1991 the Republic of Belarus has been a sovereign state, which independently carries ... its domestic and foreign policy. 9. The Declaration ... State Sovereignty was adopted ... the 27<sup>th</sup> ... July, 1990. 10. The executive power belongs ... the Council ... Ministers of the Republic of Belarus, headed ... the Prime Minister. 11. ... the terms of the constitution (1996), the President, who is the head ... state, is elected ... a five-year term.

#### **2. Put the definite article where necessary. Comment on the usage of the article in the following sentences:**

1.... Belarus is situated in ... eastern part of ... Europe and borders on ... Russia in ... north and east, on ... Ukraine in ... south, ... Latvia and ... Lithuania in ... northwest, ... Poland in ... west. 2. ... highest point, ... Dzyarzhynskaya Hill, is only 346 metres above sea level. 3. Other important rivers are ... Nyoman, ... Buh, ... Western Dzvina, ... Pripyat, ... Byarezina, ... Sozh and ... Vilia. 4. ... Lake Narach is ... largest lake in ... Belarus. 5. The executive power belongs to ... Council of Ministers of ... Republic of Belarus, headed by ... Prime Minister. 6. Belarus is a member of many international organizations including ... CIS and ... UN.

### **3. Answer the questions:**

1. Where is Belarus situated? What countries does it border on?
2. What is the territory and the population of the republic?
3. Is most of the population rural or urban? What are Belarusian big cities?
4. What is the climate and the landscape of the country?
5. Are forests a real treasure for Belarus? What are the largest pushchas and reserves?
6. What rare animal became the symbol of Belarus? How did it survive?
7. Why is Belarus sometimes called blue-eyed?
8. Are lands in Belarus fertile for growing potatoes? What else does Belarusian agriculture specialize in?
9. What branches of our industry are well developed?
10. What are the chief industrial centres in Belarus? What are they famous for?
11. What do Belarusian main imports and exports include in the early 21<sup>st</sup> century?
12. When did the republic get its independence?
13. What are the state languages in Belarus?
14. What can you say about the political setup (политическое устройство) and state power in our country?
15. What are the two chambers of the National Assembly –main legislative body of the Republic of Belarus?
16. What government body is headed by the Prime Minister in Belarus? Who is the Prime Minister of our country at the moment?
17. What does the judicial system comprise?
18. What is the prevailing religion in Belarus?
19. What are the national symbols of Belarus?
20. What international organizations is Belarus a member of?

### **4. Work in two groups:**

**Instructions for group one:** You are to work out the arguments proving the favourable geographical position of our republic.

**Instructions for group two:** You are to make the list of the disadvantages concerning the geographical position of Belarus.

After the brainstorm exchange your arguments using the following expressions: *first of all, I think...;there are various/several/many*

*reasons for this; first,.../ firstly,...; second,.../ secondly,...; moreover,.../ furthermore,.../ in addition,...; another significant point is that...; on the one hand,... on the other hand,...; in contrast to this ...; that is why...; the reason is that...; another aspect/point is that...; although it is true that... it would be wrong to claim that...;that may sometimes be true, but...; I agree with you, but; yes, but on the other hand...; I don't see it quite like that.*

### **5. Comment on the following quotes:**

My kind of loyalty was loyalty to one's country, not to its institutions or its office-holders. (Mark Twain, *A Connecticut Yankee in King Arthur's Court*, 1889)

Men love their country, not because it is great, but because it is their own. (Seneca)

Patriotism is your conviction that this country is superior to all other countries because you were born in it. (George Bernard Shaw)

Language is the road map of a culture. It tells you where its people come from and where they are going. (Rita Mae Brown)

## **ADDITIONAL READING ACTIVITIES**

### **ADDITIONAL READING 1**

**Read the text about Minsk, think of the heading for each paragraph and get ready to speak about the capital of Belarus according to your plan.**

#### **Minsk**

Minsk, the capital of Belarus, was first mentioned in 1067, but little of the old city survived except a few 17<sup>th</sup> century buildings. It appeared on the banks of the rivers Nyamiha and Svislach more than 900 years ago. At that time Minsk was a town of the Principality of Polatsk. In the late 13<sup>th</sup> century it became a town of the Grand Duchy of Lithuania. The 14<sup>th</sup>-15<sup>th</sup> centuries were important in the life of Minsk and its inhabitants. It was the period when the Belarusian nation was formed with its national language and culture. In the 18<sup>th</sup> century Minsk became a town of the

Russian Empire. After the October Revolution Minsk was declared the capital of the Belarusian Soviet Socialist Republic.

At present Minsk is the capital of the Republic of Belarus with a population of about 2 million people. Minsk grew to be an important axis of communication. It suffered badly during World War II. Our capital was almost destroyed by the fascist invaders. As soon as Minsk was liberated in July, 1944, restoration work began. Minsk was honoured with the title of the Hero-City in 1974 for people's courage and heroism during the Great Patriotic War. Now every visitor admires the city with its beautiful buildings, wide streets and avenues, green parks and fine monuments.

One of the landmarks of the capital city is Independence Avenue that crosses Minsk from the center to the north-east. The avenue is 15 km long, which makes it one of Europe's longest city thoroughfares. The avenue is famous for its architectural ensemble built in the Stalin's Empire Style in the 1950s. Independence Square is over 7 hectares big, which makes it one of the biggest squares in Europe. It was designed by Iosif Langbard for conducting rallies and military parades. The Church of Saints Simon and Helen (Red Church) is situated here. The neo-Gothic Red Church was built in 1910 by the order of aristocrat Edward Waynilowich. The church was named and consecrated in memory of Waynilowich's deceased children, Simon and Helen. The historical center of Minsk has preserved majestic temples and historical landmarks. The pearl of Minsk downtown is the Trinity Suburb featuring the 19<sup>th</sup> century buildings and atmospheric block-paved side streets. It cannot be called really historical – this is just a reconstruction, but it is performed with such fantasy and love that no one can resist its fascination!

The cultural life of the people in the Belarusian capital is varied and very interesting. The cultural scene is very diverse with good museums such as the National Museum of Belarusian History and Culture, the National Arts Museum, the Museum of History of the Great Patriotic War and the Museum of Old Belarusian Culture. Other interesting museums deal with the major Belarusian writers Kolas, Kupala, Bahdanovich and Brouka, who created a new Belarusian literature and a new Belarusian language. The most famous theatres are the Opera and Ballet Theatre, the Yanka

Kupala National Academic Theatre, the National Academic Drama Theatre named after Gorky, the Philharmonic Society.

Minsk is a city of science and students. There are 21 state higher educational establishments there and 9 private institutions. The biggest of them are the Belarusian State University and the Belarusian National Technical University. They train students for all branches of national economy. The Belarusian State Academy of Arts and the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts are the leading institutions which prepare high-qualified specialists in the sphere of culture.

Minsk is famous for its picturesque parks and gardens: Gorky Park is situated near the Belarusian State Circus along the bank of the Svislach River. During the warm season the park offers a number of rides and attractions, including the Observation Wheel that gives a wonderful view of the city. The Botanical Garden of the Belarusian National Academy of Sciences is one of the largest botanical gardens in Europe (around 100 hectares in the city). Its rich collection features over 10,000 plants from all over the world. The Chelyuskinites' Park used to be called Kamarousky Les and was part of the Vyalikaya Slepnya estate owned by the famous Radziwill and Vankovich families. Today there are around 22,000 trees in the park. Mikhailausky Garden, Alyaksandrausky Garden, Teatralny Garden, Victory Park, Loshytsa Park are very popular among the citizens of Minsk at any time of the year.

Minsk is also a big traffic centre with its large network of roads, railways, airlines and three metro lines. Both of the lines have extensions that are presently under construction.

Minsk has a highly developed industry. The chief industries are light and heavy engineering. Belarus tractors and MAZ trucks enjoy a high reputation both in our country and abroad.

The citizens of the Belarusian capital are proud of their city. A lot of tourists from our country and from abroad come to Minsk to see its sights. The fascination of Minsk is in its special aura, which is noticed by all people coming here. Tranquility, tolerance and goodwill – these are the distinctive features of its people, transferred to their city.



## Post-reading Activities

### 1. Complete the sentences with the appropriate word combinations from the text, translate them:

1. The citizens of the Belarusian capital .... .. their city.
2. Minsk ... .. its ...parks and gardens.
3. Minsk, the capital of Belarus, ... .. in 1067, but little of the old city survived.
4. After the October Revolution Minsk ... .. the capital of Belarusian Soviet Socialist Republic.
5. During the Great Patriotic War our capital ... .. by the fascist ....
6. One of the ... of the capital city is Independence Avenue that crosses Minsk from the center to the north-east.
7. The avenue is famous for its ... .. built in the Stalin's Empire Style in the 1950s.
8. The church ... .. and consecrated in memory of Waynilowich's deceased children, Simon and Helen.
9. The pearl of Minsk ... is the Trinity Suburb featuring the 19<sup>th</sup> century buildings and atmospheric block-paved side streets.
10. The cultural scene is very ... with good museums.
11. The rich collection of the Botanical Garden... over 10,000 plants from all over the world.
12. Minsk is also a big ... .. with its large ... of roads, railways, airlines and two metro lines.
13. Belarus tractors and MAZ trucks enjoy ... .. both in our country and abroad.
14. A lot of tourists from our country and ... come to Minsk to see its ....
15. Tranquility, tolerance and goodwill – these are the ... .. of its people, transferred to their city.

### 2. Ask your partner about the capital of Belarus:

1. Where is Minsk situated? How old is it?
2. When was Minsk founded?
3. Were the 14<sup>th</sup>-15<sup>th</sup> centuries important in the life of Minsk? Why?
4. Was Minsk destroyed during the World War II? When was it liberated?
5. What can you tell about the Minsk of today? What are its most famous landmarks?
6. Which of the sights (the Church of Saints Simon and Helen, the National Library, the Museum of History of the Great Patriotic War, the National Academy of Sciences of Belarus, Victory Circus, the Yanka Kupala National Academic Theatre) were not mentioned in the text? Can you tell a few words about them?

7. How many theatres and museums are there in Minsk? Which of them have you visited? Which of them do you like best?
8. What do you think of Minsk architecture? What buildings impress you most of all?
9. Are you satisfied with the transport system of the capital?
10. What picturesque places in Minsk are best for walks? Why?
11. What is your favourite place in Minsk? Why?

**3. Read and improvise similar conversations asking the way to some unfamiliar places:**

**1**

- A. Excuse me, how can I get to the Minsk-Arena Complex?  
 B. You'd better catch (get on) bus 1.  
 A. And where is the bus stop?  
 B. It's on the opposite side of the street. Cross the road at the traffic lights and go straight ahead. You'll see it on the left.

**2**

- A. Excuse me, how can I get to the railway station?  
 B. You'd better go by metro there.  
 A. And where is the nearest metro station?  
 B. It's over there, on the right.  
 A. Thank you.

**3**

- A. Excuse me, am I on the right way to the Opera and Ballet Theatre?  
 B. Yes, cross the square, turn left and you'll see it.  
 A. Is it far?  
 B. No, it's only 2 minutes' walk.  
 A. Many thanks!

**4**

- A. Excuse me, is there a supermarket near here?  
 B. Very sorry. I don't know. I'm a stranger here myself. You'd better ask someone else.

**4. Write a 150-200 word essay on the topic "My favourite place of Minsk" making use of the vocabulary of the unit adding some information from the Internet or library resources.**

## ADDITIONAL READING 2

**Read some interesting facts about Minsk to raise your awareness of the Belarusian capital. Before reading study the pronunciation and translation of the following words and word combinations:**

containment – сдерживание

cherubim – херувим

refer to – относиться к, ссылаться на

depict – изображать

the Foucault pendulum – маятник Фуко

altitude – высота

\*For the 1<sup>st</sup> time Minsk was mentioned in the chronicles of 1067 in connection with the Battle on the Nyamiha River. For a long time it was the second largest river flowing through Minsk, until it was adapted for its urban location by containment within a network of pipes. Today the name Nyamiha more commonly refers to a nearby street and metro station.

\* The emblem of Minsk depicts Madonna, two angels and two cherubims.

\* Minsk is a green city. The area of 72, 766 m<sup>2</sup> is given over to planting flowers in Minsk, which is about the size of 10 football fields.

\* Minsk Botanical Garden is the 3<sup>rd</sup> largest in Europe, after the Royal Botanic Garden Kew in London, and the park in Madrid. The area of the Botanical Garden is 96 hectares.

\* There is a square with a single building. The whole area of Paris Commune square is occupied by the only building – the Opera and Ballet Theatre.

\* There are over a hundred of big and small fountains. The oldest fountain in Minsk was opened in 1874, to mark the opening of the water supply system of artesian water. This composition is preserved until our time. The fountain, “The boy with a swan”, is located in Alyaksandrausky Garden in the centre of the capital.

\* The Victory Monument on Independence Avenue in Minsk is 36 meters high, it has a 2-meter pedestal and the size of the star on its top is 6x6 meters.

\* Nobody would guess that in 1939-1946 Minsk was the jazz capital of the USSR. During these years, Eddie Rosner, a German Jew who came to Minsk after the manifestation of Hitler's attitude toward Jews, worked in Minsk. Since 1946, jazz was banned in the Soviet Union, and Rosner was sent to the Gulag for 10 years.

\* The river of Svislach that flows through Minsk has eight sharp turns, and 54 bridges run over it.

\* The annual average of fog in the capital is 67 days. This is more than in London – there are only 45.

\* Minsk is situated at an altitude of 280 meters above sea level.

\* At the University named after M. Tank in Minsk the Foucault pendulum is installed. There are only about 20 of them in the world.

\* Minsk underground was opened on June 29, 1984, on the eve of the 40<sup>th</sup> anniversary of Minsk liberation from Nazi invaders during the World War II.

\* The longest street of Minsk and Belarus is Independence Avenue, which has the length of 12 km and an interesting history of name change.

\* May, 9 (Victory Day) and July, 3 (Independence Day) are the dates when Minsk turns into a holiday city. The grandiose parades of military machines, declamations, festivals and concerts all over the city, dedicated to the Victory Day and the liberation of Minsk during the World War II are worth to be seen.

\* The beginning of all roads in Belarus is Kilometre Zero Monument in Oktyabrskaya Square in Minsk that tells the distances to the Belarusian cities and towns, as well as to the capitals of European countries.

### **Post-reading Activities**

#### **1. Say what the following numbers refer to:**

1067, 1874, 1946, 1984, 36, 96, 54, 67, 72 766, 20, 12, 280.

#### **2. Which facts seem the most interesting for you? Find two more facts that can be added to the article.**

## ADDITIONAL READING 3

Go through the text and think of the heading for each paragraph. Give a brief summary of the reading according to your plan. Memorize the indicated words and use them in your summary.

### Outstanding People of Belarus

Belarus is a talented nation. At the dawn of its formation it **gave birth** to such **outstanding** people as Kirill Turausky, Euphrasiniya Polatskaya, Simeon Polatsky, Mikola Husousky, Symon Budny, Leu Sapeha, the dynasty of Radziwill and others. Among those who made a considerable contribution to the development of Belarusian culture and science is Francisk Skarina. His activities in literature, law, medicine and book-printing gave a powerful impulse to the development of all Slavonic nations.

**Literary classics** of the early 20<sup>th</sup> century are the poets and prose writers Maksim Bahdanovich, Yanka Kupala, and Yakub Kolas, Zmitrok Byadulya and Maksim Haretski. Many outstanding poets and prose writers made their mark in the 1920s, including the poets Uladzimir Dubouka and Yazep Pushcha, the **novelist** Kuzma Chorny, and the satirist and **playwright** Kandrat Krapiva. Most noteworthy of the writers **to preserve** and develop the Belarusian literary tradition in the 1940s and '50s are the poets Pimen Panchanka and Arkadz Kulyashou and the prose writers Yanka Bryl, Ivan Shamyakin, and Ivan Melezh. The 1960s marked the tentative beginnings of yet another **national revival** with the novels of Vasil Bykau and Uladzimir Karatkievich. Among later 20<sup>th</sup>-century writers, the poets Yawhyeniya Yanishchyts and Ales Razanau, and **the short-story writer** Anatol Sys should be noted. Other well-known writers of the late 20<sup>th</sup> and early 21<sup>st</sup> centuries are Svyatlana Alexievich, whose *Voices from Chernobyl* was translated into English in 2005; Volha Ipatava, a prominent poet, and others. Many of Minsk streets are **named after** the outstanding writers of the republic.

One of the leading landscape and genre artists of the 19<sup>th</sup> century was Napoleon Orda (1807-1883) who left an impressive **heritage** of lithographs depicting **ancient** country churches, castles and **mansions**. He is also known as a composer and a pianist. The world famous artist Marc Chagall (1887-1985) was born in Belarus and

started his artistic career here. The Black Square by the Belarusian artist K. Malevich (1878-1935) **is on display** in the Tate Gallery in London. Many talented artists such as I. Chrutski, Y. Drazdovich, A. Isachou, M. Savitsky are to be mentioned here.

Michal Kleafas Aginski **is best known for** his polonaise *Poïegnanie Ojczyzny (Farewell to the Homeland)*, written in 1794 on the occasion of his emigration to western Europe after the failure of the Kastsushka uprising. This piece can be considered one of the earliest examples of Romanticism in music. Stanislau Maniushka **created** his most outstanding works while residing in Belarus. It is here **in cooperation with** the Belarusian poet Vincent Dunin-Martsinkyevich he created the first Belarusian opera “Syalianka”. Maniushka composed over 3,000 songs which were **inspired by** Belarusian musical folklore. Belarusian music, which is both rich and varied, is also **represented by** V. Zalatarou, A. Bahatyrou (opera “In Polesye Virgin Forest”), N. Aladau, Y. Tsikotsky (opera “Mikhas Padhorny”) and many others.

We are also proud of our Opera and Ballet theatre with V. Elizaryeu who **dedicated** 36 years of his life to the development and **flourishing** of this stage. The dramatic art is closely connected with the names of such actors as G. Makarava, S Stanyuta, M. Yaromenka, R. Yankousky and others who are of great respect at home and abroad.

Many **prominent** names in the history of Belarus of the 20<sup>th</sup> century **are connected with** the Second World War. Belarus keeps memory of its national heroes who gave their lives for the freedom of their Motherland. They are Mikalay Hastela, Victar Talalikhin, Kanstantsin Zaslou, the **defenders** of Brest Fortress and many others.

Space exploration which began in the 2<sup>nd</sup> half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century gave the Belarusians one more reason for being proud of their compatriots A. Kavalyonak and P. Klimuk who were in the family of cosmonauts.

Belarusian sportsmen have contributed a lot to the **glory** and fame of the country. The names of V. Korbut, A. Myadzvyedz, V. Shcherba, R. Saley, K. Karsten, D. Domrachava made history of the world sports achievements of the Belarusian nation.

## Post-reading Activities

### 1. Answer the following questions:

1. What spheres of life have outstanding Belarusians contributed to? Are any of Minsk streets named after the famous Belarusians mentioned in the text?
2. What were F. Skarina's interests? What is he famous for?
3. Who is considered to be the classic of Belarusian literature?
4. What other famous writers and poets do you know? Can you name any contemporary writers?
5. What did N. Orda depict in his pictures? What else is he famous for?
6. What representatives of Vitsyebsk school of art received the world fame?
7. Who is the author of the polonaise *Poïegnanie Ojczyzny* (*Farewell to the Homeland*)? What occasion was it written on?
8. What was the first Belarusian opera? Who created it?
9. Who are the leading Belarusian composers of the present century?
10. Who made a considerable contribution to the development of Belarusian theatre?
10. Do you remember any names of the heroes of the World War II?
11. Are there any Belarusians in the family of cosmonauts?
12. What Belarusians contributed to the glory and fame of our culture in the international competitions?
13. What are the names of the most prominent political and public figures of Belarus?
14. What famous scientists were born in our republic?
15. Can you name any outstanding people of the world who originated from Belarus? What are they famous for?

### 2. Work in small groups. Prepare projects about the most prominent Belarusians from different fields of life. Report them to the group.

# UNIT 9 Belarusian National Culture

---

## Vocabulary

ancient	to flourish
preceding generations	buffoonery
to preserve	contemporary
applied arts	to inspire
handicrafts	to promote national art
woodcarving	fine art
straw-plaiting	to admire
embroidery	prominent
pottery	spiritual heritage
unique decorative articles	masterpiece
to value old customs	amateur theatre
enlightener	diverse
to contribute to smth	be associated with

## Pre-reading Activities

### 1. Practice saying the following words:

versatile, Slavonic, various, peculiarity, hospitable, dignified, creation, functioning, to associate, existence, an amateur, a choir, choreographic, genre, an ensemble, diverse, popularization, emergence, avant-garde.

### 2. Match the English words with their Russian equivalents:

- |                  |                                 |
|------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. a root        | a. сказка                       |
| 2. a peasant     | b. марионетка, кукла            |
| 3. harvest       | c. группа музыкантов, оркестр   |
| 4. to cherish    | d. способствовать, поддерживать |
| 5. a puppet      | e. корень, источник             |
| 6. a band        | f. заботливо относиться, любить |
| 7. pride         | g. крестьянин, сельский житель  |
| 8. to flourish   | h. урожай, жатва                |
| 9. to favour     | i. гордость, предмет гордости   |
| 10. a fairy tale | j. процветать                   |



### **3. Think of the synonyms to the following adjectives:**

ancient, colourful, trustful, hospitable, gifted, dignified, patient, modest, selfless, contemporary, prominent, captivating.

### **Reading Activities**

**Read the text and get ready to speak on the topic “Belarusian National Culture”:**

#### **Belarusian National Culture**

Belarus has an ancient and versatile culture created by the preceding generations and expressed in various written and oral artistic forms. As a part of all Slavonic culture it has much in common with other Slavonic cultures preserving its originality and peculiarity at the same time. Slavonic roots are vividly seen in ritual harvest and wedding songs, peasant ballads and colourful fairy tales. National originality and peculiarity is expressed in numerous artefacts of applied arts. The Belarusians have preserved the charm of national handicraft and are famous for woodcarving, straw-plaiting, embroidery and pottery. They create unique domestic decorative articles and national costumes.

The Belarusians have their own national character. The Belarusians are trustful and optimistic, hospitable and kind, gifted and dignified, patient and modest. They respect freedom and independence and value old customs and traditions. Some Belarusian holidays reflect the national character of our people. “Maslenitsa”, “Vialikdzen” (Easter), “Yur’ya”, “Kupalle” and “Kaliady” are the most loved and cherished folk holidays in contemporary Belarus.

The creation and functioning of national culture is closely associated with the names of the first Belarusian enlighteners: Euphrasiniya Polatskaya, Francisk Skarina, Mikola Husousky and Simeon Polatsky. Their selfless life and activity contributed greatly to the spiritual growth of Belarusian nation and formation of its original culture.

The flourishing of Belarusian culture fell on the 20th century when the professional theatre, music, painting and literature came into existence. The first national professional theatre started functioning on the basis of traditional games, buffoonery, puppet and school amateur theatres. Today theatrical life of our country is

rich and diverse. There are about 30 state theatres in Belarus now. Bolshoi Opera and Ballet Theatre of the Republic of Belarus, Yanka Kupala National Theatre as well as Belarusian State Academic Musical Theatre in Minsk are well known and admired internationally. Different theatre festivals are held in Belarus every year, for example “Slavonic Theatrical Meetings”, “Belaya Vezha” and “Teatralny Koufar”.

The Belarusian nation is especially proud of its musical culture. Contemporary Belarusian musical art preserves national traditions as well as follows modern tendencies of the world musical movement. The Belarusian bands perform in all popular musical styles: classical and heavy rock, chanson, ethnic music, rap, blues, electronic music and others. A lot of music groups promote national musical art: National Academic Folk Orchestra of Belarus named after I. Zhinovich, State Academic Choir named after G. Shirma, State Chamber Orchestra, Folk Choreographic Ensemble “Khoroshki”, Song and String Ensembles “Pesnyary” and “Verasy” and others. A lot of musical forums are held in Belarus. The international annual festival of arts Slavyansky Bazar in Vitsyebsk has become the symbol of the festival movement of Belarus.

Books and literature have always played an important role in the culture of our country. Modern Belarusian literature began in the first half of the 19th century with the work of Yan Chachot and Vincent Dunin-Martsinkyevich. Fathers of Belarusian literature, great national poets of the 20th century, Yanka Kupala, Yakub Kolas and Maksim Bahdanovich made a considerable contribution to popularization of Belarusian language and culture. The Republic gave birth to a number of prominent writers such as K. Krapiva, K. Chorny, P. Brouka, M. Lynkou, V. Bykau, M. Tank and many others. Nowadays a real source of national pride is the National Library of the Republic of Belarus.

Fine art in Belarus varies in style, direction and genre. The most captivating works by Belarusian artists of different periods can be seen in museums across the country. The largest collections of works of art are in the National Art Museum of the Republic of Belarus in Minsk, which actively promotes national art. Other prominent museums across the country are Vitsyebsk Art Museum, Mahilyow Regional Art Museum and Polatsk Art Gallery. The northern Belarusian town of Vitsyebsk became the centre of the

revolutionary avant-garde movement at the beginning of the 20th century. Marc Chagall, one of the most famous Belarusians, was born in Vitsyebsk in 1887 and founded an art school in this city.

Nowadays considerable attention is paid to the spiritual heritage of Belarusian people. Best traditions and masterpieces of national poetry, music and applied arts inspire both professional and amateur artists and favour the development of Belarusian culture and art.

### **Post-reading Activities**

#### **1. Complete the following sentences with the appropriate word from the vocabulary:**

1. The Belarusians have ... the charm of national handicraft.
2. They respect freedom and independence and ... old customs and traditions.
3. The creation and functioning of national culture is closely associated with the names of the first Belarusian ... .
4. ... Belarusian musical art preserves national traditions.
5. The Republic gave birth to a number of ... writers.

#### **2. Comprehension check. Select the correct answer (multiple choice):**

1. *Slavonic roots are vividly seen*
  - a) in national theatrical traditions
  - b) in peasant ballads and colourful fairy tales
  - c) in Belarusian fine arts
2. *Some Belarusian holidays*
  - a) reflect the national character of our people
  - b) are popular in other countries of the world
  - c) are associated with famous people
3. *The first national professional theatres started functioning*
  - a) as the private theatres of wealthy people
  - b) on the basis of traditional games, buffoonery, puppet and school amateur theatres
  - c) as palaces and clubs of culture
4. *The festival of arts Slavyansky Bazar in Vitsyebsk*
  - a) is an annual festival of chamber music
  - b) is a national festival of pop song held every autumn
  - c) has become the symbol of the festival movement of Belarus

5. *The largest collections of works of art in Belarus are in*

- a) the Vitsyebsk Art Museum
- b) the National Library of the Republic of Belarus
- c) the National Art Museum of the Republic of Belarus

**3. Answer the questions:**

1. What is the origin of Belarusian culture?
2. Where is the national peculiarity and originality most vividly seen?
3. What are the most common traits of the Belarusian national character?
4. What personalities influenced the development of Belarusian culture?
5. Speak about the beginning of the theatrical life in Belarus.
6. What musical groups promote Belarusian national culture?
7. Name the most prominent Belarusian writers.
8. Give some facts concerning the development of fine arts in Belarus.

**4. Prove that the following statements are true. Give additional information:**

1. Belarus has an ancient and versatile culture.
2. The Belarusians have preserved the charm of national handicraft.
3. Theatrical life of our country is rich and diverse.
4. Contemporary Belarusian musical art preserves national traditions.
5. The Republic gave birth to a number of prominent writers.
6. The Belarusians have their own national character.

**5. Comment on the following quotes about culture:**

1. People without the knowledge of their past history, origin and culture are like a tree without roots. (M. Garvey)
2. Without traditions, art is a flock of sheep without a shepherd. (W. Churchill)
3. Culture is the widening of the mind and of the spirit. (J. Nehru)
4. The theatre is the primary evidence of a national culture. (J. S. Mill)

## ADDITIONAL READING ACTIVITIES

### ADDITIONAL READING 1

**Read the following texts about popular folk holidays in Belarus, complete exercises after each of them:**

#### **Folk Holidays in Belarus**

There are ten public holidays in Belarus, which are observed nationwide and are official days off. Among them are New Year, Catholic and Orthodox Christmas, Labour Day, Victory Day, Independence Day, etc. But Belarusian people remember not only the great battles and fights: the traditions and customs of our ancestors are also kept in people's memory. Some of them are even included in the UNESCO World Heritage list. Certainly, nowadays, when most people live in big cities, old traditions are not so widespread. Still there is a tendency to revive old customs, especially if they are connected with positive emotions, enjoyable time, and bright impressions.

Perhaps, the most ancient and loved pagan holiday in contemporary Belarus is Kupalle.

#### **KUPALLE**

**Kupalle** is associated with numerous legends and myths. Now it is celebrated on the night of July, 7 in accordance with the Orthodox calendar. But our ancestors celebrated the Midsummer Day on June, 23. They believed that on the night before that day witches, sorcerers and ghosts roamed the earth trying to do harm to people. It was also believed that on Kupalle night the fern had a glowing flower –“Paparac’-kvetka”. The lucky couple that would find it would live happily and would be able to foresee the future. No wonder that a lot of young boys and girls spent hours in search for the fern-flower in blossom, which was also a symbol of love.

The central part in Kupalle celebration was lighting bonfires. During the day young men would prepare the place to start the fire. They would go around the village collecting old things – clothes, broken barrels – and would take them out to the chosen place. Usually it would be a meadow, a forest glade or a bank of the river. The oiled wooden wheel would be set on the fire to symbolize the

sun. Jumping over the fire when it is burning low, as well as bathing in a river or lake were supposed to be the acts of purification. People also performed traditional dances (karagods), sang folk songs and competed in strength.

A popular type of magic practiced on Kupalle night was fortune telling. The girls would put their wreaths on the water and let the river carry them. The boy who fished the wreath out of the water would be that girl's intended. It was also the best time to gather herbs and to prepare love potions.

The holiday of Kupalle has been widely featured in the Belarusian literature and works of art. It lives on the Belarusian soil as a living reminder of our past and our hope for a better future. Today, these festivities are a mix of ancient traditions and rituals, theatrical performances and games.

**Say whether the following statements are true or false according to the text:**

1. Our ancestors celebrated the Midsummer Day on June, 23.
2. A lot of young boys and girls spent hours at Kupalle night in search for the fern-flower in blossom, which was also a symbol of power.
3. Jumping over the fire when it is burning high, as well as bathing in a river or lake were supposed to be the signs of revelry and strength.
4. Kupalle was also the best time to gather herbs and to prepare love potions.

### **KALYADY**

All New Year celebrations in Belarus are tied to **Kalyady** – the ancient pagan ritual with maskers and songs. On the 24<sup>th</sup> of December (6<sup>th</sup> of January according to the Orthodox Church) our ancestors were greeting Kalyada. Each family prepared delicious food, but most dishes were fast, for instance boiled apples, mushrooms, kvas (traditional drink), and others. People lit candles and put some straw under the table cloth, as before Christ, straw was a pagan symbol of fruitfulness.

Nowadays people say that “Kalyady” is a God’s holiday. All the days and nights from Christmas to Epiphany are considered sacred and called “Kalyady”. The main purpose of Kalyady is to get rid of

everything bad in one's life and to begin a new life cycle. It is also a joyful time when people are enjoying themselves.

During Kalyady, groups of merry young boys and girls in smart clothes go from house to house in Belarusian villages and towns. Each person in the procession of "Kalyadouschyki" (carol-singers) has a role according to his character and temperament: one of them bears the star, others sing carols, amateur musicians play the accordion or beat the tambourine, and amateur actors are disguised as Goats, Bears, Storks, Horses, Gypsies and Old Men.

On Kalyady the Belarusians like to visit each other, celebrate weddings and arrange fairs. By the way, it was at the fairs in the old days when vagrant musicians and puppeteers gave their performances. Small puppet theatres called "Batleyka" were popular in Belarus. Some people consider that the word "Batleyka" originated from the word "Bethlehem" – the name of Christ's birthplace.

Folk celebrations of Kalyady occupy a special place in Belarusian holiday calendar. This holiday is especially appreciated by Belarusian people, because following our grandparents' traditions and customs helps us preserve our identity and uniqueness.

**Answer these questions to the text "Kalyady":**

1. When is the holiday of Kalyady celebrated in Belarus?
2. How did the Belarusians celebrate Kalyady in the past?
3. What is the main purpose of celebrating Kalyady today?
4. Speak on the role of the procession of "Kalyadouschyki".
5. Small theatrical performances were given at fairs on Kalyady, weren't they?
6. What ancient Kalyady traditions are kept nowadays?

### **A WEEK OF PANCAKES**

For those who live in cities, **Maslenitsa** is a time for pancakes, barbeques and burning of straw dolls. In the countryside this is one of the best-loved holidays and the preparations begin in advance. During Maslenitsa week, preceding the fast, our ancestors would eat as much as they could and enjoy various entertainments. They cooked pancakes, made cheese, went sledging, danced round fires and had fistfights.

Maslenitsa is one of the “tastiest” holidays for rural children. Grandmothers do their best to treat their precious grandchildren to fabulous pancakes, cottage cheese cakes, bagels and stuffed pies. Maslenitsa is a public holiday rather than a family one. It is associated with jollity and fairs, dressing up and enjoyment. Many rituals and tokens, known to the older generation, are meant to encourage a good harvest and wealth. Some girls would tell fortunes on this holiday as they do at Christmas.

Along with pancakes rural dwellers make cheese for Maslenitsa. The other name for this period is Cheesy Week. In the past, on entering the house of a young hostess, the guests usually uttered “If you don’t give us cheese, you won’t have a son. If you don’t give us poppy seeds, you won’t have a daughter!” So, rural beauties had to learn to make cheese from childhood.

Each day of Maslenitsa week is special. Monday is a “Welcoming Day”, as on this day everyone welcomes guests, and in the villages the ice slopes are built. Tuesday is a “Playful Day” – most entertainments should be enjoyed on this day. On Wednesday Maslenitsa pancakes are cooked, so it’s called “Gobbling Day”. Thursday is a day of revelry, on which people would ride horses and play outdoor games. On Friday, “Mother-in-law Evenings” are held where they treat their sons-in-law to delicious pancakes. And on Saturday, on “Sisters-in-law Day”, women would invite their husbands’ sisters and give them presents. Sunday is a “Pardoning Day”; following the church service, people would ask each other to forgive them for all the offences they have caused over the past year. These rituals, passed down through the ages, help people learn to be jolly and to repent of bad deeds.

**Complete the sentences with the information from the text “A Week of Pancakes”:**

1. For those who live in cities, Maslenitsa is a time for ...
2. During Maslenitsa week our ancestors would ...
3. Maslenitsa is a public holiday, which is associated with ...
4. The other name for Maslenitsa period is ...
5. Many rituals and tokens – known to the older generation – are meant to encourage ...



## Post-reading Activities

1. Find information about food festivals held in other countries of the world. Share it with your group mates.
2. Get ready to speak about one of the Belarusian holidays mentioned above.

## ADDITIONAL READING 2

Read the text about Slutsk waistbands and give its summary:

### Slutsk Waistbands: History of the National Symbol

The famous Slutsk waistbands are among Belarusian national treasures, a fine example of decorative and applied art. They are not only a historic and cultural symbol but also a modern brand of Belarus.



Long, wide waistbands with beautiful patterns and complex weave-work from precious yarns became popular in the Belarusian lands in the 16<sup>th</sup> and 17<sup>th</sup> centuries. Amazing events and family secrets, mysterious and sometimes mystical stories are connected with them.

Only noblemen could afford wearing these exceptionally beautiful, symbolic and expensive waistbands. A waistband in the attire of a noble man symbolized belonging to the elite, centuries-old family traditions and, of course, wealth.

Belarusian weavers created unique patterns and symbolic motifs, and devised their own exclusive technology. The Slutsk manufactory of the Radziwills, one of the richest and most influential dynasties in Europe, became world famous. In its heyday the Slutsk manufactory employed up to 55 weavers, 55 apprentices and spinners. The production of authentic waistbands at the Radziwill's manufactory continued into the middle of the 19<sup>th</sup> century. Slutsk masters put special marks on every waistband they made. During the times of Rzeczpospolita these marks were in Latin. Later they were made in the Cyrillic alphabet.

A classical Slutsk waistband was a luxurious sash (3.5–4 m long and 35–40 cm wide), which was worn folded or rolled up above the

outer garment of the nobility. This classy accessory could be one-, two-, three- and four-facial. Each side was used depending on the colours of the outfit and the situation. For instance, the waistband was put on with its golden or red side out on a holiday; the black side was used in mourning; green and grey parts were worn in everyday life.

It is believed that nearly 1,000 Slutsk waistbands have survived till the present day. Almost all of them are kept outside Belarus: in the museums of Poland, Ukraine, Russia, Lithuania, and also in private collections. Belarusian museums have 11 Slutsk waistbands of different years of manufacture, as well as numerous fragments.

### **Post-reading Activities**

#### **1. Complete the sentences using the information from the text:**

1. Slutsk waistbands are not only a historic and cultural symbol but also ...
2. Long wide waistbands became popular in the Belarusian lands in ...
3. A waistband in the attire of a noble man symbolized ...
4. In its heyday the Slutsk manufactory ...
5. A classical Slutsk waistband could be worn ...
6. It is believed that nearly 1,000 Slutsk waistbands ...

#### **2. Answer the following questions:**

1. When did long waistbands become popular in the Belarusian lands?
2. Who could afford wearing beautiful Slutsk waistbands?
3. What noble family owned the Slutsk manufactory?
4. Did Slutsk masters put special marks on every waistband?
5. How many Slutsk waistbands survived till the present day? Are there any in the Belarusian museums?

#### **3. Get ready to speak about the most famous traditional crafts in Belarus.**

## ADDITIONAL READING 3

**Read about a legendary folk dance ensemble “Khoroshki” and find in the text the adjectives, which describe the group:**

### **The Legend of Belarusian Folk Dance**

For many centuries, Belarusian folk dances have been one of the strongest and most developed forms of art, playing an important role in the preservation of national traditions and acting as an inspiration to Belarusian professional performers. Most folk dances developed among people in villages, and were passed on from generation to generation in a particular region.

Nowadays Belarusian folk bands help to understand a real Belarusian soul. *Ensemble “Khoroshki”* is a Belarusian legend, a leading choreographic group of the country. The history of the ensemble started in 1974. The white stork, a symbol of the Belarusian land, is the emblem of the choreographic group. The entire world has become the scenic area for “Khoroshki”. The audiences of more than 30 countries have gratefully applauded the Belarusian musicians and dancers, enchanted with wonderful colours of costumes, beautiful melodies, and masterly feats. Those who have seen a 60-member ensemble filling the stage with vigorous movement will never forget their exciting performance.

It is always a treat to watch the dozens of fresh-faced, high-spirited, perfectly drilled, smiling young dancers executing the intricate, athletic, gracefully patterned choreography. The dancers appear in a great variety of costumes, many of them lavishly embroidered on rich, glittering colourful fabrics; the men are dashing, the women are showy in their whirling skirts.

Each concert of “Khoroshki” consists of a lot of big numbers with their own costumes, gesture and musical style. There are “typical” folk dances, where traditionally dressed country lads and lasses are stepping lightly and playfully flirting. They are usually followed by “urban polka-quadrille” from the early 20<sup>th</sup> century. A stylized, courtly looking circle dance is particularly attractive, when the boys are displaying the girls like beautiful figurines.

“Khoroshki” are accompanied by their own orchestra. It is lined up across the back of the stage, having pairs of flutes, violins, accordions, zithers, bagpipes, and other folk instruments. They give

a full concert of folk-inspired Belarusian music, usually in a popular dance-band style. So, all is there, at the concert of “Khoroshki”, a great example of Belarusian culture.

### **Post-reading Activities**

#### **1. Complete the sentences with the appropriate words from the list below:**

*circle dance; emblem; bands; numbers; ensemble; figurines; gesture; performance*

1. Nowadays Belarusian folk ... help to understand a real Belarusian soul.
2. The white stork, a symbol of the Belarusian land, is the ... of this choreographic group.
3. Those who have seen a 60-member ... filling the stage with vigorous movement will never forget their exciting ... .
4. Each concert of “Khoroshki” consists of at least a dozen of big ... with their own costumes, ... and musical style.
5. A stylized, courtly looking ... .. is particularly attractive, when the boys are displaying the girls like beautiful ... .

#### **2. Translate paragraphs 3, 4 and 5 in written form.**

#### **3. Find information about other famous choreographic ensembles of Belarus, get ready to report it to the group.**

# UNIT 10 Books in Our Life

---

## Vocabulary

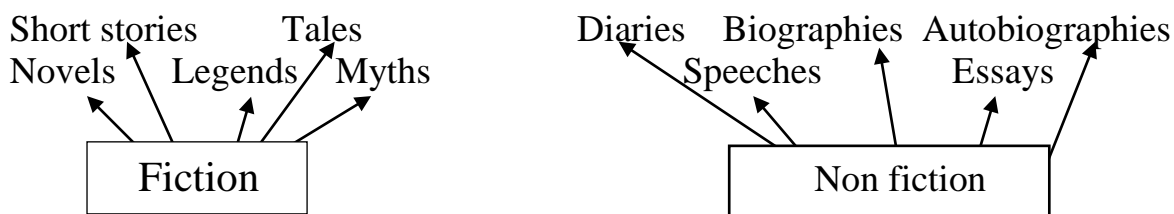
General:	short story
read in the original	sonnet
periodical	tale
plot	tragedy
print	
Writers and characters:	Literary works and their parts:
author	chapter
character	episode
novelist	masterpiece
playwright	novel
poet	piece of literature
writer	play
	poem
Genres:	story
adventure story	page
autobiography	paragraph
biography	passage
classics	series
detective story	volume
drama	Writer's activities:
essay	create
fable	deal with
fairy-tale	depict
fiction	describe
folklore	enrich
legend	impress
myth	inspire
historical novel	publish
humorous story	reveal
poetry	show
popular science	translate
prose	Impressions and
psychological drama	characteristics:

contemporary  
critical  
imaginary  
impressive  
lyrical  
poetic

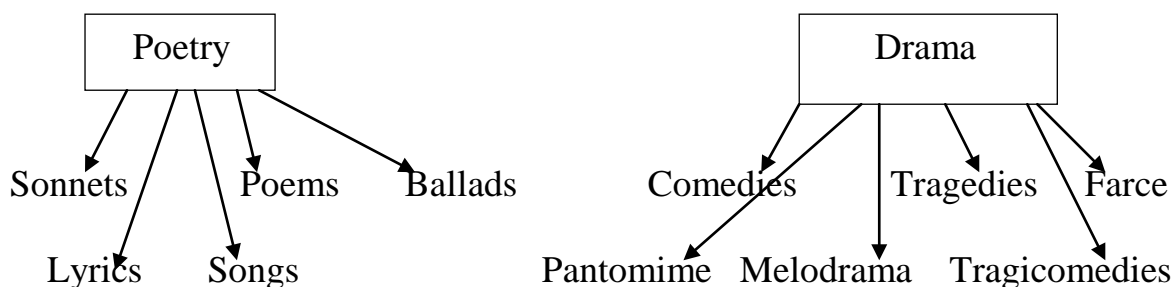
realistic  
talented  
touching  
unbelievable  
unusual

### Pre-reading Activities

1. Study the following scheme. Give examples of books of different genres:



### Literary Genres



2. Match the English words and their Russian equivalents:

- |                    |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. e-books         | a. беллетристика     |
| 2. fairy-tales     | b. персонажи         |
| 3. fiction         | c. сказки            |
| 4. dramatist       | d. сочувствовать     |
| 5. characters      | e. кругозор          |
| 6. contemporary    | f. предубеждение     |
| 7. sympathize with | g. брать взаймы      |
| 8. prejudice       | h. современник       |
| 9. borrow          | i. драматург         |
| 10. outlook        | к. электронные книги |

### **3. Read the expressions and find their English equivalents in the text:**

Я регулярно занимался чтением; источник духовной и эмоциональной силы; находить ответы на жизненные проблемы, с которыми я сталкиваюсь; чем больше я читаю, тем больше понимаю; пронизаны традицией наполнения души добром и состраданием; привлекла широкую взрослую аудиторию; широко представлена на международной арене.

#### **Reading Activities**

**Read the text and say if the author is fond of reading. Do you share his preferences in reading? Make the plan of the text.**

#### **My reading habits**

I'm fond of reading. I don't borrow books from the library until it's absolutely necessary because I like the smell and the rustling of the pages of a new book, which is just bought. As paper books are becoming more and more expensive, e-books seem rather popular and convenient.

I like reading books about the history of our country, about famous people and the life of my contemporaries abroad. Literature means much in my life. It helps to form the character and the world outlook, to understand life better. I've done regular reading since I was seven. At first these were small children books like fairy-tales, amusing stories for light reading. Then came adventure and detective stories to be followed by fiction. These were different kinds of books: for pleasure and entertainment, for knowledge and education. Some of them remained with me forever as a source of spiritual and emotional power. They awaken creative thought in my mind, help to find the answers to different life problems I face.

The more I read the more I understand the Russian classics: A. S. Pushkin, M. Y. Lermontov, L. N. Tolstoy, F. M. Dostoevsky, I. S. Turgenev. They are all my favourites. But there is one more name in Russian literature that is very dear to me. That is Anton Pavlovich Chekhov. In my opinion, he is the greatest Russian dramatist and short-story writer. I'm never tired of reading and rereading his plays and short stories. He created a number of characters who are sensitive, intellectual, and delicate. Chekhov's books are permeated with the tradition of filling in the soul with good and compassion.

One of the first writers I read in the original was J. K. Rowling. Reading “Harry Potter” was a very entertaining and educative process. I developed my knowledge of English and enjoyed the time spent at reading. The novels chronicle the life of a young wizard, Harry Potter, and his friends Hermione Granger and Ron Weasley, all of whom are students at Hogwarts School. A series of many genres, including fantasy, drama and the British school story (which combines elements of mystery, thriller, adventure, horror and romance), it has many cultural meanings and references. According to Rowling, the main theme is death. There are also many other themes in the series, such as prejudice, corruption, and madness. The Harry Potter series of fantasy novels attracted a wide adult audience, and have become some of the most widely read works of children’s literature in history, with readers of all ages and in many countries.

Like most Belarusians I’m proud of our national literature widely represented on the international arena by the classics Yanka Kupala and Yakub Kolas, Maksim Bahdanovich, Ivan Melezh, Uladzimir Karatkievich, Vasil Bykau and the contemporaries Svyatlana Alexievich, Raisa Baravikova, Adam Hlobus, Viktar Martsinovich. My favourite Belarusian writer is Uladzimir Karatkievich, a well-known author of historical novels, plays, short stories and poems. Among his best works are the works about the past of Belarus such as “Old Legend”, “The Black Castle of Alshany”, “The Wild Hunt of King Stakh”, etc. My favourite book is “The Land beneath White Wings”. The author tells us about the history and culture of Belarus from old times till today. Every line of his essay speaks of the author’s love for motherland, its people and its beautiful nature. In his books Uladzimir Karatkievich often used lines from the poems of other poets to describe the beauty of Belarus.

### **Post-reading Activities**

#### **1. Answer the following questions:**

1. Are you fond of reading? What books do you like reading?
2. What genres of stories do you like reading (detective / romantic / spy/ adventure / love stories)?
3. Which American or British writers do you know?
4. Do you like poetry?
5. Who is your favourite poet? Can you recite any of his poems?



6. Have you ever tried to write poems?
7. What are the most prominent names in modern Belarusian literature?
8. Who is your favourite contemporary Belarusian writer?
9. Which of his books have you read?
10. Why do you like this author? Which of his characters do you like best of all?
11. Were his books translated into any foreign languages?

**2. Comment on the following quotes about literature, find some facts about the authors:**

I am a part of everything that I have read. (Theodore Roosevelt)

In a good book the best is between the lines. (Swedish Proverb)

There are worse crimes than burning books. One of them is not reading them. (Joseph Brodsky)

Make it a rule never to give a child a book you would not read yourself. (George Bernard Shaw)

If you don't like to read, you haven't found the right book. (J. K. Rowling)

**3. Get ready to speak about your reading habits and your favourite writers using the plan of the text "My reading habits".**

## **ADDITIONAL READING ACTIVITIES**

### **ADDITIONAL READING 1**

**Read the review of the book. Be ready to write the review of the book just read, making use of the vocabulary:**

#### **Book review**

I'd like to tell you about the book I've recently read. It's quite a famous novel by an American writer Jerome David Salinger called *The Catcher in the Rye*. The story was written in the late 1940s and the action takes place in the post-war period in the USA. This book was very popular among the readers after it was published, and its problems aren't old-fashioned even now.

The main character, Holden Caulfield, is a teenager of about seventeen. He is a student in Pencey School and tells us his life

story. Holden is tall and handsome. He sounds miserable about the life he is living. But he is sincere and so romantic that he is liked by the readers.

The fact is that Holden has been expelled from Pencey for failing his exams. He's got a couple of days before Christmas vacation starts, and he isn't eager to appear at his house in New York where his parents and younger sister live, before next Wednesday. So he stays at a hotel and entertains himself with a lot of different things. For instance, he goes to a bar where he dances with unknown ladies; he calls his girlfriend and invites her to the movies. Finally, he wants to meet his sister, Phoebe, and enters his house secretly. To his luck, his parents are out at a party, so he has a chance to speak to Phoebe. Only when his mother comes into the room, Holden hides in the closet. After that he makes up his mind to leave home and go to another state. But he wishes he could see Phoebe and say good-bye to her. To his surprise, Phoebe comes to the place of their meeting with a heavy suitcase as she wants to go away with him. In the end, Holden changes his mind and returns home.

I really enjoyed the book. You get to understand Holden's behavior and his dream – to become “a catcher in the rye” so as to catch the kids in the rye. In my opinion, the problems of young people nowadays are similar to those Holden had. What I liked best is the way Holden changed during the story, as in the end he became a little better and got to understand the aim of his life. What I didn't like was some slang Holden used, though it was very typical for such teens as Caulfield.

While I was reading the book, I felt sorry for him, but appreciated his personality and point of view.

I would, of course, recommend my friends, students and teachers to read that novel by Salinger. I hope you'll like it.

### **Post-reading Activities**

#### **1. Match the paragraphs of the review with the following aims:**

- a) to give the opinion of the book
- b) to introduce the book to the reader
- c) to recommend the book to the readers
- d) to describe the main character
- e) to describe the plot of the story
- f) to say where and when the story takes place

**2. Complete the sentences writing about the book you've read:**

- 1) I'd like to tell you about the book called \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) The story was written in \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) The action takes place in \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) The main character \_\_\_\_\_, is (was) \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) What I really like is \_\_\_\_\_
- 6) What I'd like to criticize is \_\_\_\_\_
- 7) I personally think the book is \_\_\_\_\_

**3. Match the author with the title of the book he or she wrote. Tell a few words about the author and the literary work. Use information from the Internet if necessary:**

W. Scott	wrote	Ivanhoe
Ch. Dickens		The Jungle Book
W. Shakespeare		Alice in Wonderland
J. London		Jane Eyre
Ch. Bronte		Martin Eden
E. Hemingway		Sister Carrie
O. Wilde		Winnie the Pooh
Th. Dreiser		The Picture of Dorian Gray
R. Kipling		A Farewell to Arms
A. Milne		Romeo and Juliet
L. Carroll		David Copperfield

**ADDITIONAL READING 2**

**Read and listen to the text. Answer the following listening comprehension questions:**

1. How was the main library of the Republic of Belarus called upon its opening in 1922?
2. Was the library destroyed during the war?
3. What does a "diamond" shape of the new library building symbolize?
4. What is the area in front of the library used for?

**The National Library of Belarus**

From the very beginning libraries were centres of education, **the storage of all knowledge** of the mankind. Modern libraries are increasingly being redefined as places to get **unrestricted access to** information in many formats and from many **sources**. Many

libraries are now also **repositories** and access points for maps, prints, or other documents and artworks on various storage media. Libraries may also **provide public facilities** to access CD-ROMs, subscription databases, and the Internet. All the best from ancient traditions combined with modern **achievements** make the world famous libraries. They are Alexandria Public Library, Boston Public Library, Folger Shakespeare Library, The Library of Congress, The National Library of Canada, New York Public Library, etc. We can't but mention The National Library of Belarus which is now a visit card of the republic.

The National Library of Belarus **was established** on September 15, 1922. Originally it was the main library of the Republic of Belarus and was called the Belarusian State University Library. There were only 60,000 **items** at the opening of the Library. About one thousand people were its **users** at that time. Some time passed and the Library opened its **departments** in other Belarusian cities such as Vitsyebsk, Mahilyow, and Homyel. There was a universal library collection covering all **fields of knowledge** including materials concerning Belarusian literature, history, sciences, etc. In 1932 the Library celebrated its 10<sup>th</sup> **anniversary**. **On this occasion** the Library **was named after** V. I. Lenin.

At the beginning of 1941 the Library collections totalled over 2,000,000 items; over 15,000 users visited the Library. The further Library's development was interrupted by World War II. Though the library was destroyed during the war, it was **built anew** and in October 1944 it opened its doors to readers. By 1948 the collection of the Library had been restored though many gaps still remain unfilled.

In 1992 the State Library of Belarus was renamed into the National Library of Belarus. The new building of the National Library of Belarus, situated on the Independence Avenue, opened its doors on June 16, 2006. It was designed by **architects** Mikhail Vinogradov and Viktor Kramarenko. The building is 73-metre high and it has 22 floors. It is an absolutely unique building, a gorgeous engineering and architectural construction. The shape of a "diamond" symbolizes the value and endlessness of the world of knowledge. There is the first Belarusian printer Francisk Skarina bronze monument in front of the Library's central entrance.

Today the National Library of Belarus is the main informative and cultural centre of the country. It **houses** the largest collection of Belarusian printed materials and the third largest collection of books in Russian after the Russian State Library (Moscow) and the Russian National Library (St. Petersburg). The library service **is in great demand**. More than 90 thousand Belarusian **citizens** are the library users. Every day the library is visited by more than 2.2 thousand people. The library users have an access not only to bibliographic, full texts, graphic, sound and linguistic **databases** of the National Library but also to databases of other libraries and informative institutions, including foreign ones. There are 20 **reading rooms** in the Library to satisfy education and research needs of users in different subjects. They hold 2 thousand seats and are located on three floors. Each reading room **is fitted up with** the modern scanning, printing and copying **equipment**. There is also a **multipurpose conference hall** (a place for business meetings and **negotiations**), a musical-art hall and art galleries. In addition to serving as a functional library, the National Library is a **city attraction**. It has an **observation deck overlooking** Minsk. The area in front of the library is used for many public concerts and shows.

### **Post-reading Activities**

**1. Translate the text using a dictionary and answer the following questions:**

1. What are the functions of modern libraries?
2. Name the most famous libraries of the world.
3. When was the National library of Belarus established?
4. How many items were there at the opening?
5. Where did the library open its departments?
6. What happened to the library during the war period?
7. When did the new building of the National Library open its doors? Tell about it as a famous city attraction.
8. Prove that the National Library is a very important informative and cultural center of the country.

**2. Think of the heading for each paragraph, get ready to speak about the National Library of Belarus according to the plan using the indicated vocabulary.**

## ADDITIONAL READING 3

**Tell what you know about the following British writers. Read and translate the texts. What new facts have you learnt?**

### CHARLOTTE BRONTE

Charlotte Bronte was born in Thornton in Yorkshire, England, the daughter of a clergyman. Her mother died in 1821, so four of the Bronte daughters were sent to a boarding school (which Charlotte portrayed as Lowood school in *Jane Eyre*). Charlotte blamed this school for the early deaths of her two elder sisters Maria and Elizabeth, and for her own poor health in later life. At home the girls and their brother Branwell read widely, and invented and wrote highly imaginative stories.

Charlotte taught as a governess in two families, and then, in her early twenties, went to Brussels to study languages. She fell deeply in love with her French teacher, and suffered greatly when he did not reply to the letters she wrote to him after returning home. Charlotte helped her sisters Emily and Anne to publish their first novels, and began to write *Jane Eyre*. Although this novel was very successful, Charlotte was now living through a tragic period in her personal life. Branwell and Emily died in the same year, 1848, and her remaining sister Anne the following spring. In spite of this great emotional loss, and the terrible loneliness which followed, she struggled to continue writing. In 1854, after some hesitation, she agreed to marry her father's assistant, Arthur Nicholls, but she died a few months after her wedding, when she was expecting their first child.

Charlotte Bronte is widely praised for her depth of feeling and the realism of her writing. Her works continue to be read and appreciated. Her most famous novel is *Jane Eyre* (1847), which has great emotional interest and narrative power. Her other published works are: *Shirley* (1849), *Villette* (1853) and *The Professor*, her first novel, published in 1857 after her death.

### JEROME K. JEROME (1859–1927)

Jerome K. Jerome was born in Walsall in Staffordshire, England, and brought up in east London. His father was an unsuccessful ironmonger. Jerome was at various times a clerk, a schoolmaster, a reporter, an actor and a journalist. He became joint editor of a

humorous magazine called *The Idler* in 1892, and then started his own weekly paper called *To-day*.

Jerome wrote articles, plays and novels, but is best known for his highly amusing *Three Men in a Boat*, which immediately became a humorous classic and has been appreciated as such by several generations of readers. It still maintains its popularity: as the author modestly says, “The world has been very kind to this book”.

Well-known works by Jerome K. Jerome include: *Three men in a Boat* (1889), *Idle Thoughts of an Idle Fellow* (1889), *Three Men on the Bummel* (1900), *Paul Kever* (1902) and the play *The Passing of the Third Floor Back* (1907).

### **SIR ARTHUR CONAN DOYLE (1859–1930)**

Arthur Conan Doyle was born in Edinburgh, Scotland, the son of a civil servant. He studied medicine and then worked as a doctor for eight years. To add to his income he started writing short stories, which were published in magazines. His first novel *A Study in Scarlet* had as its main character a detective called Sherlock Holmes. This strange intellectual figure, based in his fictional home in London’s Baker Street, soon attracted public interest, and Conan Doyle was asked to write Sherlock Holmes stories for publication in the well-known *Strand Magazine*.

Conan Doyle is famous for creating the best-known detective in literature and his good-natured companion Dr. Watson. He himself, however, preferred writing his many historical romances, such as *The White Company*. He became bored with his hero Holmes, and tried to kill him off in a story called *The Final Problem*, but the public outcry was so great that Holmes had to be brought back to life in one of his best adventures, *The Hound of the Baskervilles*.

During the Boer War (1899-1902), Conan Doyle worked as a physician at a field hospital in South Africa. In 1902 he received a knighthood for his pamphlet about the war, *The War in South Africa*.

Well-known works by Sir Arthur Conan Doyle include: *A Study in Scarlet* (1887), *The Sign of Four* (1890), *The White Company* (1890), *The Hound of the Baskervilles* (1902), *The Valley of Fear* (1914). The Sherlock Holmes stories are collected in: *The Adventures of Sherlock Holmes* (1892), *The Memoirs of Sherlock Holmes* (1894), *The Return of Sherlock Holmes* (1905) and *The Case Book of Sherlock Holmes* (1927).

## Post-reading Activities

### 1. Correct these sentences if necessary:

Charlotte Bronte:

1. Charlotte Bronte liked her first boarding school.
2. She became a teacher in Brussels.
3. She finally married her French teacher.
4. She had four sisters and a brother.
5. She stayed in Yorkshire all her life.

Jerome K. Jerome:

1. Jerome K. Jerome was brought up in Walsall.
2. He had many jobs.
3. He was the editor of his own weekly paper called *Yesterday*.
4. His best-known work is *A Study in Scarlet*.
5. He wrote *Three men in a Boat* in 1898.

Arthur Conan Doyle:

1. Sir Arthur Conan Doyle was born in London.
2. He studied medicine for eight years.
3. Sherlock Holmes first appeared in *The Hound of the Baskervilles*.
4. The public preferred Conan Doyle's historical romances.
5. Conan Doyle tried to kill off Sherlock Holmes forever in *The Final Problem*.
6. He was knighted for his short stories.

**2. Get ready to speak about one of the writers adding some information from the Internet or library resources.**

**3. Write an essay about one of Belarusian writers.**

## ADDITIONAL READING 4

**Read the texts about two famous playwrights, guess their names and say what facts helped you make your suggestions. Before reading study the translation of the following words and word combinations:**

gentry – низшее дворянство

coat of arms – герб

peasant – крестьянин



rebellion – восстание  
penname – псевдоним  
yeoman – мелкий землевладелец  
plague – чума  
«Venus and Adonis» – «Венера и Адонис»  
«The Rape of Lucrece» – «Обесчещенная Лукреция»  
dedicate to – посвящать кому-л.  
Earl – граф (*английский дворянский титул*)

**-1-**

UNESCO announced 2008 the year of this Belarusian writer, poet, translator and a prominent theatrical figure. Some of the facts from his biography are quite uncertain. We know that he was born on the 17<sup>th</sup> of February, 1808. His family formally belonged to the gentry and even had its coat of arms – a swan. But when his father Yan and his mother Martsiana were getting married they didn't have their own land. Under one version he was sent to St. Petersburg after the death of his father. He studied medicine but left the Academy because couldn't stand operating and blood.

In 1831 he returned to Minsk and worked as a clerk in court. He got married in 1840 to a lawyer's daughter Yuzefa Baranouskaya. They had seven children. By the way, his daughter Camilla and son Miraslau were known as talented pianists when teenagers.

In 1840 he also bought the manor Lutsinka and left the civil service. He settled in Lutsinka and started his literature activity. The development of new literary genres, especially that of drama provoked a great interest in theatrical performances. In Lutsinka he established his amateur theatre. The company of his theatre numbered more than 20 actors including the writer himself, two his daughters and a son. There was a choir and an orchestra. The libretto for his farce “Selyanka” (which got one more name “Idylia”) was published in 1846. This work combines drama monologues and dialogues with music, choir singing and dancing.

The main hero of “Idylia” is not a landlord but a peasant Naum Prygavorka. When the production was staged in Minsk by the dramatist's theatrical company, he played the role of Naum. He sometimes used the name Naum Prygavorka as his penname. The theatre was based on democratic and folk traditions. It was soon closed by the police. The hero of the article and his family

supported the rebellion in 1863–1864 headed by K. Kalinousky. The writer even spent about 9 months in prison for this.

His literature pieces were written in the Polish and Belarusian languages. Among the works in Belarusian are “Hapon”, “Zalety”, “Idylia”, “Pinsk gentry” and many others. He was a talented translator. His translation of Mitskiewich’s poem “Pan Tadeush” was published in 1859. His work had a profound influence both on the development of Belarusian literature and theatre and on evoking a great interest in the Belarusian national character. Today if you look through the repertoires of Belarusian theatres you’ll undoubtedly find his name there.

## -2-

He is generally regarded as the greatest poet and dramatist of English literature. He is also called “Swan of Avon”.

He was born in 1564, probably on April, 23 and he also died on April, 23, 53 years later. His parents, John and Mary got married about 1554. Mary was of the landed gentry, John – a yeoman – a glover and commodities merchant. No doubt, the boy attended the local grammar school in the town where his parents lived, and studied primarily Latin rhetoric, logic, and literature. At the age of 18 (1582) he married Anne Hathaway, a local farmer’s daughter eight years his senior. Their first daughter (Susanna) was born six months later (1583), and twins Judith and Hamnet were born in 1585.

His life can be divided into three periods. The first 20 years, which include his schooling, early marriage, and fatherhood, the next 25 years as an actor and playwright in London; and the last five in retirement back in Stratford where he enjoyed moderate wealth gained from his theatrical successes.

Perhaps in 1583, he began his career with a London theatrical company. When, in 1592, the plague closed the theatres for about two years, he turned to writing poetry. Most notable were “Venus and Adonis” and “The Rape of Lucrece” both of which were dedicated to the Earl of Southampton. During the same period he was writing his sonnets. He returned to playwriting when theatres reopened in 1594. Amid all of his success, he suffered the loss of his only son, Hamnet, who died in 1596, at the age of 11.

In 1599 our hero became one of the partners in the new Globe theatre, built by Chamberlain's men. This group was a remarkable assemblage of "excellent actors who were also business partners and close friends including Richard Burbage and others who worked together as equals".

He wrote 37 plays which continue to be read widely and produced frequently throughout the world. Among them are "Hamlet", "Othello", "Merchant of Venice", "Macbeth", "A Midsummer Night's Dream", "Romeo and Juliet", and many others.

His influence extends from theatre and literature to present-day movies and to the English language itself. His writings have also influenced a large number of notable novelists and poets over the years, including Herman Melville and Charles Dickens. Finally, he is the second most quoted writer in the history of the English-speaking world after whoever wrote The Bible.

### **Post-reading Activities**

- 1. Compare the two famous playwrights, noting down the things they have in common.**
- 2. Get ready to speak about the impact of these prominent men into the development of literature of their nations.**

# UNIT 11 Theatre

---

## Vocabulary

pride	audience
ballet	phase
to function	renovation
choir	to be mentioned
palace	fruitfully
mastery	to be located
to create	to establish
to attract	drama
to perform	dramatic
performance tours	genre
status	post-war period
the middle ages	remarkable
theatre	repertoire
- puppet theatre	works by Belarusian (foreign)
- drama theatre	authors
- opera and ballet theatre	stage
- young spectator's theatre	to stage
- guest theatres	to play a role
art	- to play an important role
professional	- to play a central role
company	play

### Pre-reading Activities:

#### 1. Explain the meaning of the following words:

puppet theatre, playwright, professional company, to be reopened, repertoire, masterpiece, reconstruction, audience, to stage

#### 2. What's the English for:

древний, ранний, становится, богатый, хотя, развитие, известный, Великая Отечественная война, большинство, в наши дни, областной, получать, современный, характеризовать, любители, возраст, разнообразный, зарубежный, сезон, тур, однако

### **3. Make your own sentences with the following words:**

ballet, choir, to create, performance tours, puppet theatre, genre, repertoire, to stage, a play, playwright, masterpiece, company, to attract

### **Reading Activities**

#### **1. Read the text and get ready to speak on the topic “Theatre in the Republic of Belarus”**

### **THEATRE IN THE REPUBLIC OF BELARUS**

The tradition of Belarusian theatre is very ancient. It started in the early Middle Ages as folk puppet theatres – Batlejka –and folk drama. The art of ballet became known in Belarus in the second half of the 18<sup>th</sup> century. The richest Belarusian and Polish feudal lords such as the Radziwills, Oginskis, Sapiegas had drama theatres, choirs and ballet schools at their palaces. Though that tradition died out in the 19<sup>th</sup> century, the development of the theatrical art did not stop.

An important role in the development of theatrical art in Belarus was played by the work of the playwright, actor and producer V. Dunin-Martsinkyevich, who began to create the Belarusian professional theatre in the middle of the 19<sup>th</sup> century. A new phase of development of the Belarusian theatrical art began in the 20<sup>th</sup> century: a series of new theatres with professional companies were opened, many famous Belarusian authors fruitfully worked in the dramatic genre, for example Y. Kupala, Y. Kolas, and others. By the middle of the 20<sup>th</sup> century there were 23 professional theatres in Belarus. However, during the Great Patriotic War the majority of them were closed. In the post-war period many theatres were reopened, new ones were established. Today there are about 30 state theatres in Belarus.

Dramatic art plays a central role in the theatrical culture of Belarus. **The Yanka Kupala National Academic Theatre** is located in Minsk. This oldest Belarusian theatre, opened in 1920, is a real pride of our country. The first play performed on the stage of the theatre was Kupala’s “Pavlinka”. In general, the first performances were based on the Belarusian folklore and works by Belarusian writers but then foreign works started to be produced on the stage. Nowadays the theatre presents lots of plays, written by

such authors as W. Shakespeare, B. Shaw, N. Gogol, F. Dostoevsky, V. Bykau and others.

**The National Academic Drama Theatre named after Gorky** began its functioning as the Regional Drama Theatre in 1928 in Mogilev. In 1932 the theatre received the status of the Russian Republican Drama Theatre. Since 1947 the company has been working in Minsk. The modern repertoire of the theatre is characterized by staging the classical masterpieces by A. Ostrovsky, A. Chekhov, F. Schiller, Lope de Vega, Goldoni.

**The National Academic Opera and Ballet Theatre of the Republic of Belarus** was opened in Minsk in 1933 with the opera “Carmen”. Today the theatre suggests a remarkable choice of unforgettable operas and ballets: “Boris Godunov”, “Othello”, “Sadko”; “Nutcracker”, “Sleeping Beauty”, “The Fountain of Bakhchisarai”, “Firebird”, “Chipollino” and many others. The professional mastery of the Belarusian ballet dancers is highly estimated by theatre lovers all over the world. It should be mentioned, that in 1996 the theatre was divided into two independent structures: the Ballet Theatre and the Opera Theatre. In 2008 the two companies were reunited into the National Academic Opera and Ballet Theatre of the Republic of Belarus. Moreover, the building of the theatre underwent complex reconstruction and renovation. The reconstruction project was over in 2009.

The performances of **the Young Spectator’s Theatre** and **the Belarusian State Puppet Theatre** attract the audience of all ages. The theatres stage plays full of gaiety and unbelievable adventures. The repertoire of the theatres is rich and varied: it includes fairy tales and plays by Belarusian, Russian and foreign authors.

The theatrical season in Belarus continues all the year round. In summer the Belarusian theatres make performance tours, while the audience enjoys the art of guest theatres.

### **Post-reading Activities**

**1. Match left-hand column with the right-hand column to make up the phrases according to the text:**

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. theatrical | a. tale      |
| 2. middle     | b. round     |
| 3. written    | c. estimated |

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 4. highly         | d. by           |
| 5. to reunite     | e. period       |
| 6. reconstruction | f. art          |
| 7. to attract     | g. the audience |
| 8. fairy          | h. project      |
| 9. to work        | i. ages         |
| 10. post-war      | j. into         |
| 11. all the year  | k. fruitfully   |

**2. Fill in the suitable prepositions where necessary. In some cases prepositions are not needed:**

1. The art ... ballet became known in Belarus ... the second half ... the 18<sup>th</sup> century.
2. A new phase ... development ... the Belarusian theatrical art began ... the 20<sup>th</sup> century.
3. ... the middle ... the 20<sup>th</sup> century there were 23 professional theatres in Belarus.
4. V. Dunin-Martsinkyevich began to create the Belarusian professional theatre ... the middle ... the 19<sup>th</sup> century.
5. Numerous plays are performed ... the stage ... the theatre.
6. This theatre stages the plays ... modern authors.
7. The first performances were based ... the Belarusian folklore but then foreign works started to be produced ... the stage.
8. The professional mastery ... the Belarusian ballet dancers is highly estimated ... theatre lovers all ... the world.

**3. Be ready to answer the questions:**

1. When did the tradition of the Belarusian theatre start?
2. Who began to create the first Belarusian theatre of modern type?
3. Which Belarusian theatre is the oldest one?

**Dictionary Work**

**I Consult your English-English dictionary and study the difference between the words *auditorium* / *house*, *play* / *performance*.**

**1. Use *auditorium* or *house* (or both) according to the meaning:**

1. What do we call the part of a theatre in which the audience sits? We call it ....
2. By 7.15 ... was almost full.
3. Smoking is not permitted in ... .
4. This play inevitably draws full ... .
5. He

hurried upstairs towards... . 6. The curtain fell and ... went wild.  
7. Which are the best seats in ... ?

## **2. Use *play* or *performance* according to the meaning:**

1. We managed to get seats just on the day of ... . 2. "The Three Sisters" is my favourite ... by Chekhov. 3. I got two stalls a quarter of an hour before ... began. 4. He offered me two seats for the first ... of ... . 5. At what time do ... start at the circus? 6. A matinee is ... given in the afternoon. 7. Spectators are not allowed to stand in the aisle during ... .

## **II Translate the Russian words into English:**

1. The bell rang and (зрители) went back to their (места). 2. They were sitting in (партер). 3. We could see (сцена) very well from our (места). 4. I'm an actress, and the job of an actress is (играть на сцене). 5. This is the best scene in (акт) One. 6. Englishmen often call (галерея) in a theatre "the gods". 7. He took up his (бинокль) for a long look round (зал). 8. When I go to the Bolshoi I like having my seat in (бельэтаж). 9. We (купили) our seats at the box-office of the theatre. 10. He always plays (драматические) roles. 11. When does the (театральный) season begin in Minsk? 12. What do you think of (игра актеров)?

## **ADDITIONAL READING ACTIVITIES**

### **ADDITIONAL READING 1**

**Read the text and be ready to speak about going to the theatre:**

#### **Going to the Theatre**

Going to the theatre can be entertaining and educative. Despite competition from the cinema, television, and the Internet the theatre still plays an important part in the entertainment of the English.

In London there are theatres for all tastes: some people prefer musical comedy, and shows of this kind are very popular. Variety shows, in which actors entertain the audience with sentimental and comic performances or skits on social or political life, also draw full houses. Those who do not care for musical comedy or variety will find other shows to their taste. Some theatres stage modern



plays; Shakespeare and other classics are played mostly at Old Vic; the Royal Opera, formerly Covent Garden, shows opera and ballet.

As a rule, performances start (or begin) at about half past seven and run for three hours or more, including about an hour for intervals between acts. There are sometimes matinees in the afternoon, but most spectators prefer evening shows.

People book (or reserve) seats beforehand either at the box-office (or booking office) or by phone. The best and most expensive seats in the auditorium (or house) are the orchestra stalls, the boxes, and the dress-circle. From these seats you can see the stage very well. The pit and the gallery are cheap, but the view is not so good from these seats. Spectators may not stand in the aisle during the performance.

When you arrive at the theatre you leave your coat at the cloakroom, where you can also get opera-glasses. An usher shows you to your place and sells you a program, which tells you the story of the play that is on that evening and gives the names of the actors who will act the different parts (or roles).

## **Post-reading Activities**

### **1. Give the English equivalents for the following Russian words and phrases and use them in your own sentences:**

эстрада, эстрадный концерт, оперетта, партер, ложа, спектакль, во время спектакля, дневной спектакль, антракт, бинокль, касса, заказать билеты по телефону, развлечение, билетер, провести на место, аншлаги, проход, играть на сцене, игра (актера), гардероб, сдать пальто в гардероб.

### **2. Insert the missing words:**

1. I found the play most... and educative.
2. ... isn't over till 10.45.
3. I like ... my seats beforehand, long before the night of ... .
4. The ... was packed, there was not an empty seat.
5. The best seats in the theatre are ...

## ADDITIONAL READING 2

**Read the text about theatre in your life and complete it using your own information:**

### Theatre in My Life

Theatre has been one of the most exciting attractions for centuries and today it is really popular. Of course nowadays there are a lot of other attractions, for example cinema, TV and the Internet, but theatre will never lose its prominent position. Life is short, art is forever. Theatre is the greatest wonder in the world. A skillfully put on play may work wonders. It may teach the audience, develop their artistic views and tastes. Due to good acting viewers are able to penetrate deep into characters' personality, feel their passion and sufferings.

Theatrical art in Belarus is represented by about 30 professional theatres. My favourite theatre is \_\_\_\_\_.

Though I am not a great theatre lover I like to go to the theatre once or twice a month. I try to watch the best performances that are on at our theatres. For me visiting a theatre is an event in my life. I always book tickets at the box-office of the theatre well in advance especially if it is the first night. I prefer the stalls but if the performance is promising I am ready to sit wherever I get the ticket.

My last visit to the theatre was a total flop. My friend and I visited \_\_\_\_\_ theatre. The performance failed to catch the public. The plot was rather lifeless. The acting was childish. Some of actors didn't even know their lines properly. I was disappointed by unsuitable music and poor directorship. No wonder the audience was cold and passive.

My last visit to the theatre was a great success. My friend and I visited \_\_\_\_\_ theatre. The performance was enthusiastically received by the audience. I was charmed by the music, acting was brilliant and the leading actress took 3 curtain calls. The actors touched my heart with their sensitive portrayal of the characters. I suppose that the play got favorable reviews.

**1. Make a dialogue with your partner about your visiting a theatre. Use the words and word expressions from the text.**

## **ADDITIONAL READING 3**

**Read the following text and retell it:**

### **Theatre in Great Britain**

Britain is one of the world's major centers for theatre and has a long and rich dramatic tradition. It's interesting to know that the first theatre was opened more than 400 years ago under the patronage of Queen Elizabeth I. Nowadays both classical and modern repertoire is presented in British theatres. Works by Shakespeare, Marlowe, Congreve and Sheridan as well as by such modern writers as Alan Bennett, Simon Gray, Christopher Hampton and David Edgar are demanded in the country and abroad. Earnings from British theatrical productions overseas are more than 110 million pounds a year.

There are also experimental theatres in Great Britain. There are mime theatres, street theatres, theatres that represent the cultures of the black, Asian and other ethnic minorities. In every town and village amateur dramatic groups gather to perform plays, pantomimes, musicals and many others. There are more than 6,000 amateur dramatic groups in England alone.

There are two types of theatres in Great Britain: subsidized and commercial. Subsidized theatres (the Royal Shakespeare Company, the Royal National Theatre, and the Royal Opera House) have permanent company of directors, actors, designers, etc, and each season they stage several productions. For this reason such companies are called repertory companies. Commercial theatres are those which receive no subsidy. A commercial theatre is simply a building with no permanent company.

The centre of theatrical activity in Britain is London. It shows more plays than any other city and enjoys a high standard of acting. There are about 48 principal theatres in or near the West End and around 8 in the suburbs. They are very different; some theatres concentrate on the classics and serious drama, some on light comedy, variety shows, some on musicals. These include the National Theatre and the Old Vic on the South Bank, the Open Air Theatre in Regent's Park and the reconstruction of Shakespeare's Globe Theatre.

Music in all its forms – pop music, folk music, jazz, light music and brass bands – plays an important role in British cultural life. The widespread interest in classical music is reflected in the large audiences at orchestral concerts and at performances of opera, ballet and chamber music. Regular seasons of opera and ballet are given at the Royal Opera House, Covent Garden. The greatest opera singers of the world can be heard there.

The West End is said to have more theatres, more shows and larger audiences than Broadway in New York. A great many British productions have worldwide success and move from the West End to Broadway. The great musicals by Andrew Lloyd Webber, including *Cats* and *The Phantom of the Opera*, run for years in London and New York simultaneously, and in theatres throughout the world. *Cats* has been played for 30 years in the West End and it is considered to be the world's most successful musical.

- **The Royal National Theatre** in London is one of the United Kingdom's two most prominent publicly funded theatre companies, alongside the Royal Shakespeare Company. From its foundation in 1963 until 1976, the company was based at the Old Vic theatre in Waterloo. The National Theatre is three theatres under one roof, which offer a wide mixture of plays: new works, revivals of ancient and modern classics, contemporary foreign plays, and experimental drama. The National Theatre has an annual turnover of approximately J54 million.

- **Open-Air Theatre** is an outdoor theatre in the centre of Regent's Park, which represents mainly Shakespeare in traditional style. Performances are given in summer.

- **The Royal Opera House** is situated in the London district of Covent Garden. The large building is often referred to as simply "Covent Garden". It is the home of The Royal Opera, The Royal Ballet and the Orchestra of the Royal Opera House. The Royal Opera House seats 2,268 people.

- **The Old Vic** is a theatre established in 1818. The Old Vic is a home for classic and new drama. In 2003, American actor Kevin Spacey was appointed as new artistic director of the Old Vic Theatre Company which received considerable media attention.

**1. Make up your own questions to the text (4 questions of each type: general, alternative, special, and disjunctive).**

## ADDITIONAL READING 4

**Read the text and be ready to compare the theatrical life of the USA, the UK and the Republic of Belarus:**

### Modern American Theatre

American culture is not isolated from world culture. The American art is mainly based on the European tradition, but it has absorbed and assimilated many different influences as well. The American theatre is not an exception. It is over 200 years old. The professional theatre in America began in 1752 with the opening of the Dock Street Theatre. The actors of the company were all from Europe, and the repertoire included plays which were popular in London at that time (*Hamlet*, *Richard III*, *the Merchant of Venice* and others).

Modern American theatre is heavily connected with American literature, films, television, and music.

New York City is the theatre centre of the USA. The New York theatre world is divided into two parts. One centers around Broadway (one of the city's most important streets) where almost all large commercial theatres are located. Broadway theatre, commonly called simply Broadway, refers to theatrical performances presented in one of the 40 large professional theatres with 500 seats or more located in New York. Along with London's West End theatre, Broadway theatre is usually considered to represent the highest level of commercial theatre in the English-speaking world. Most Broadway productions are musicals and sophisticated drama or comedies featuring one or two highly paid stars. Broadway productions (which are rather elaborate and expensive) entertain millions of theatre-goers. Seeing a Broadway show is a common tourist activity in New York.

The other New York theatre division is off-Broadway theatres which are found throughout the city in buildings, offices and stores. Sometimes there is no raised stage, and then the cast performs in the centre of the room, surrounded on all sides by the audience. Off-Broadway shows often provide a more experimental, challenging performance than is possible in the larger Broadway theatres. Some Broadway shows, however, such as the musicals *Hair*, *Little Shop of Horrors* and others began their runs off Broadway and later transferred onto Broadway.

## **1. Work in small groups and find the detailed answers to the questions:**

- 1) How old is the theatre in the USA?
- 2) What event is the birth of US professional theatre connected with?
- 3) What did the repertoire of the first American theater include?
- 4) Which city is the theatre centre of the USA?
- 5) Which parts is the New York theatre world divided into? Speak about each of these parts.

## **2. Render the text.**

### **ADDITIONAL READING 5**

#### **Read and retell the text:**

#### **A Miracle**

David Garrick was a famous English actor of the 18<sup>th</sup> century. At the beginning of his stage career he worked in a company of actors touring the south of England.

One summer day the company arrived at a little town. They staged a tragedy based on an episode of The Punic Wars. The evening was warm and they played in an open-air theatre.

At the beginning of the second act there was a scene of a battle-field. There were several bodies of dead soldiers lying on the stage. David Garrick played the part of one of these dead bodies. He was lying on the stage and trying hard to look like a real dead body. An actor playing the part of a Roman general came forward and, standing over Garrick, began to recite a monologue.

Suddenly Garrick heard a mosquito buzzing near his ear. There were two mosquitoes. The next moment several mosquitoes were stinging him in the face and in the leg. Garrick wanted to scratch himself, but he was playing the part of a dead man, so he could not move. He suffered greatly.

Meanwhile the general went on with his monologue. "Look at this young man," he was saying, "Only a few hours ago he was full of life... and there he lies now – a dead body! Only a miracle can bring him back to life!"

And just at that moment Garrick, who could not stand the mosquitoes any longer, began scratching himself violently!

The audience burst out laughing. Of course, the actor playing the part of the general could not continue his monologue. He was thinking hard how to save the situation. At last he had an idea. “The gods have heard me!” he cried. “The miracle has happened!”

**1. Make example sentences for the following words:**

famous, company, monologue, tragedy, open-air theatre, miracle, audience

**2. Can you tell your group mates a funny story concerning theatre?**

# UNIT 12 Music

---

## Vocabulary

to get away from smth  
to set the mood  
sacred event  
to imagine  
to turn to smth  
to permeate  
evident  
to influence  
to attribute  
property  
purpose  
entertainment

market product  
to ponder  
to derive  
under the auspices of  
arrangement  
to express  
appreciation  
to encourage  
to promote  
to whip up  
healing power

## Pre-reading Activities:

### 1. Answer the following questions:

1. What role does music play in your life?
2. Do you often listen to music?
3. What genres of music do you know?
4. What types of music do you prefer?
5. Do you often listen to classical music (jazz, country music, heavy metal)?
6. What kind of music do your friends and parents listen to?
7. Is there any kind of music that you hate? Why?
8. Who is your favourite composer (singer or group)?
9. Have you ever seen your favourite band or singer perform live?
10. Can you sing or play any musical instrument? Are you good at it?
11. Can you read music?
12. What makes a song popular for you, the lyrics of the song or the melody?
13. Do you like singing karaoke?
14. Do you listen to music while doing your homework?
15. What is music? Is it just a combination of sounds or an art which reflects life?



## 2. Match the music genres with their definitions:

Rock	Serious music that has been popular for a long time
Rap	Modern music that is popular with young people and consists of simple tunes
Jazz	A type of rock music with a strong beat, played very loudly on electric guitars
Pop	A slow sad style of music that came from the southern US
Country	Music originally played by black Americans with a strong beat
Blues	Popular music based on the folk style of the southern and western US
Classical	Popular modern music with a strong loud beat, played using guitars and drums
Heavy metal	Popular music where lyrics are spoken or chanted with reoccurring musical beats

## 3. Remember some of the music idioms:

1. *To face the music* – to accept the unpleasant consequences of one's actions.
2. *Music to my ears* – information that makes someone happy.
3. *As fit as a fiddle* – in excellent health.
4. *To play second fiddle* – to be subordinate to someone.
5. *For a song* – very cheap.
6. *Out of tune* – not in agreement.
7. *To play by ear* – to perform without preparation.

## Reading Activities

### 1. Read the text and get ready to speak on the topic “Music”

One can't get away from music today – it dramatically sets the mood at sacred events, on dance floors, in movies and theatres. Millions of people all over the world like music and can't imagine their life without it. They listen to music, they dance to music, they even learn to play musical instruments. People turn to music in joy and sorrow. In one form or another, music has permeated human society through the ages of its long existence.

From historical records it is evident that the power to influence people has always been attributed to music. Its ecstatic properties have been put into the service of religion from earliest times.

Nowadays music is composed and used for various religious and ceremonial purposes, for aesthetic pleasure and, of course, as an entertainment market product.

But what is music? Philosophers and scholars have pondered the question, offering explanations from the cosmic to the physical. The Greek term from which the word *music* is derived meant “art of the Muses” and referred to any art practiced under the auspices of the Muses. Dictionaries define music as “the arrangement of sounds made by the instruments or voices in a way that is pleasant or exciting” or “the combination of instrumental or vocal tones in a structured and continuous manner”. But of course music is a much more complicated notion, not just pleasant sounds and tones. Music is one of the best ways to express our feelings, ideas and emotions using no words.

Appreciation and understanding of music comes with time and depends on the person’s education and intelligence. It is very important to be a good listener – to concentrate on music, using imagination and mind as well. One should also know the three basic components of music – rhythm, melody and, in most Western music, harmony.

Various kinds of music are popular with the public. Some people like classical music, others are fond of jazz, still others prefer folk music, disco, pop, heavy metal, rock-and-roll, rave, rap, house or techno.

Musical tastes are subjective, but recent research has shown that certain types of music have a particular effect on people. For instance, some types of music help to feel relaxed and peaceful, whereas others may be stimulating to the brain, encouraging curiosity and alertness. Music can promote loving feelings but also whip up hate, jealousy and violence.

Scientific work on the healing power of music started with plant research. Many types of classical music accelerated plant growth, whereas heavy metal caused plants to wilt and even die. Nowadays healing properties of music are used in hospitals, soothing music is often more effective than pills.

So, what is music? Love and hatred, day and night, life and death, all and one... Can people live without music? Perhaps, not...

## **Post-reading Activities**

### **1. Complete the following sentences with the appropriate word from the vocabulary:**

1. People ... music in joy and sorrow.
2. Ecstatic ... of music have been put into the service of religion from earliest times.
3. Music is one of the best ways ... our feelings, ideas and emotions using no words.
4. Music ... loving feelings, but can also ... hate and violence.
5. The power ... people has always been ... to music.
6. Music may be stimulating to the brain, ... curiosity and alertness.

### **2. Find out whether the statement is true or false according to the information of the text:**

1. The power to whip up wars has always been attributed to music.
2. The Greek term from which the word “music” is derived means “under the auspices of the Muses”.
3. Millions of people all over the world like music, but can do without it very well.
4. Music is one of the worst ways to express our feelings and emotions.
5. The main components of music are melody and harmony.
6. Dictionaries define music as “a chaotic arrangement of sounds”.
7. In order to understand and appreciate music it is not at all important to be a good listener.
8. Some types of music help to relax after a hard day at work.
9. Scientific work on healing power of music started with research on animals.
10. Nowadays music is an entertainment market product.

### **3. Answer the following questions:**

1. Is it possible to get away from music nowadays?
2. Why do people turn to music?
3. What power has always been attributed to music?
4. How do dictionaries define music?
5. What does music express?
6. Is it easy to understand and appreciate music?
7. What are the basic components of music?
8. What types of music are popular with the public?
9. How can music influence people?

10. What do you know about healing properties of music?
11. What is music for you?

**4. Do you agree or not? Prove your point of view:**

1. The understanding of classical music depends on people's education and intellect.
2. Music is a very complicated notion.
3. Nowadays it is almost impossible to escape from music.
4. Music's motto is "art for art's sake".
5. Music can really be called a universal language of mankind.

**5. Comment on the following quotations:**

1. "Music is enough for a lifetime – but a lifetime is not enough for music" Sergej Rahmaninov
2. "Music is the strongest form of magic" Marilyn Manson
3. "The highest mission of music is to serve as a link between God and man" John F. Kennedy
4. "After science that which comes nearest to expressing the inexpressible is music" Aldous Huxley
5. "Without music, life would be a mistake" Friedrich Nietzsche
6. "Music gives a soul to the universe, wings to the mind, flight to imagination and life to everything" Plato

## **ADDITIONAL READING ACTIVITIES**

### **ADDITIONAL READING 1**

**Read and translate the text into the Russian language. Use dictionary if necessary.**

#### **America's music**

Considering the forbidding aspect of their new land, it is not surprising that the music of the early settlers was essentially prayer set to song. The first music published in the Colonies appeared in the 1698 edition of the Bay Psalm Book.

In the early 1700s the well-to-do imported manuscripts of music from Europe to play for dancing and concerts. In the early 1800s more people had time and money for the pursuit of culture, and the music of European courts and concert halls was widely heard, especially in the cities.

By the mid-1800s European romantic melodies were the favorite music. Into this “sea” of romanticism sailed American first great songwriter, Stephen Foster, who became famous in the 1850s for “My Old Kentucky Home” and other “plantation songs”, as he called them. America, at last, was beginning to find a voice of its own, and Foster’s melodies were sung in the minstrel shows popular in his day.

With the wave of German immigration in the mid-19<sup>th</sup> century came many trained musicians who – as performers, composers, and teachers –spread an enthusiasm for romanticism and for that romantic instrument, the piano. The already growing piano business increased tremendously.

One of the chief manufacturers was Henry Steinweg, a German immigrant, who changed his name to Steinway. By 1860 there were 22,000 pianos in America.

The Civil War brought martial music, and this music, in its turn, accelerated the development of the bright sound of the brass band, which – with Sunday concerts in the park – became one of America’s most popular musical institutions for the next half century. Enthusiasm for martial ensembles spread so rapidly that by the turn of the century more than 20,000 amateur and professional brass bands were giving regular concerts in towns and villages throughout the country.

At the turn of the 20<sup>th</sup> century the music most widely representative of this country was gaining a fast-growing audience. This appealing new and free sound was called jazz. Rooted in the field hollers and work songs of the plantations early jazz and the blues had haunting echoes of an American past. This music, in all its cultural and ethnic permutations, has perhaps done as much to create understanding and respect among all races as any other single force in American history.

### **Post-reading Activities**

#### **1. Answer the following questions:**

1. What music were the first American settlers fond of?
2. Where did the well-to-do people import music from?
3. What music was popular in the 1800s?
4. Who was the first great American songwriter?

5. How can you explain the growth of piano business in the 19<sup>th</sup> century America?
6. When did brass bands become popular?
7. What were the roots of jazz?
8. Do you like jazz?

## **ADDITIONAL READING 2**

**Read and translate the text into the Russian language. Use dictionary if necessary.**

### **A History of Rock Music**

The first type of rock music, rock and roll, originated in the United States in the 1950s. Rock and roll was a combination of the rhythm-and-blues style, the piano-blues style known as boogie woogie, and the country-music style. It's important to understand that during the '50s the rock and roll was actually a synonym for black R&B music. Rock and roll was first promoted by radio disc jockeys like Alan Freed. The first Rock&Roll performer was Elvis Aaron Presley. He wasn't like the American singers of the '40s and early '50s. He wasn't neat, sweet and safe. He was rough, tough and dangerous. His music was dangerous too. He called himself "The King of Rock and Roll" and played an electric guitar. Teenagers all over the world fell ill love with this new style. They bought millions of his records.

As with early rock and roll, the major American record companies did not take the British bands seriously at first. But with the appearance of the Beatles everything changed. The success of the British band became too difficult to ignore. No less popular were the Rolling Stones, playing hard, aggressive rock-and-roll.

In the late 1960s hard rock emerged, focusing on thick layers of sound, loud volume levels, and guitar solos. In the early '70s the popular mainstream was dominated by superstar rock groups, such as the Eagles, Stevie Wonder and Elton John.

About 1976 punk rock originated in New York City and London as a reaction against the commercialism of mainstream rock. Punk-rock music was raw, rude and fast. London punk groups included the Sex Pistols, the Clash. They didn't look happy and rich. They looked poor and angry. Many of them couldn't play their

instruments at all. Punk started as a revolution... by 1980 it was a fashion.

Perhaps the most significant rock-music development of the '80s was the rise of rap, a genre in which vocalists perform rhythmic speech. Rap originated in the mid '70s in the South Bronx community of the New York City and was initially associated with cultural movement called hip-hop, which included acrobatic dancing (break dancing) and graffiti art.

Finally, there was hippy rock. This was the time of "flower power" and protests against the Vietnam War.

As you can see, rock music has grown to include hundreds of musical styles, some of which define a broad mainstream, while others are supported by small but devoted audiences. As for the future, who knows where rock 'n' roll will go.

But the spirit of rock and roll will never die, that's for sure.

### **Answer the following questions:**

1. What was the first type of rock music?
2. How can rock and roll be defined?
3. How was rock and roll promoted?
4. Who was the first famous rock and roll performer?
5. Was Elvis Presley different from other performers? Why?
6. What British groups became popular all over the world?
7. When was hard rock born?
8. What can you say about punk rock?
9. What was the most significant rock music development of the 1980s?
10. What type of rock music do you prefer and why?

### **ADDITIONAL READING 3**

**Read and translate the text into the Russian language. Use dictionary if necessary.**

#### **Hip-hop's message now spans the world**

*Hip-hop music began in America, but now you have to look elsewhere to find its old political edge.*

Hip-hop with a political edge has packed its bags and moved out of America. More than two decades ago, American rapper Chuck D of Public Enemy called hip-hop the "black people's CNN", because

it spoke to African-Americans about their own crises. But within 20 years, American hip-hop as social and political protest had all but died. Today, rappers rule the airwaves with lyrics about money, women and good times.

Today, the outposts of political hip-hop are found in nations as varied as Indonesia and France, Columbia and Greenland. In France, hip-hop's issue of the day is immigration. In South America, it is poverty; in Africa, AIDS. There is a clear distancing of global hip-hop from what the music has become in the United States. "There's no use in being a hip-hop head, with the clothes and the music, but taking no account for social change", says Cape Town rapper MC Shaheen.

American hip-hop was born in the early 1970s in the Bronx, New York, when local dee-jays like Grandmaster Flash, Kool Here and Afrika Bambaataa began using hip-hop as a framework for contemporary art forms like graffiti and break-dancing. Hip-hop, loosely defined by four elements – emceeing (rapping), b-boying (break-dancing), dee-jaying (spinning and scratching records on a turntable) and graffiti – provided an escape from gangs, drugs and poverty in urban minority communities. One reason hip-hop maintains a low commercial profile in much of the world is that rappers often use their own languages. This tends to increase their local appeal, but also to limit their international reach. A major source of hip-hop's power as social criticism is the fact that it puts the words before melody. "Hip-hop is like an intimate book that one shows to everyone", says French rapper Rohff.

In Africa, young people see hip-hop as a natural evolution of their oral storytelling traditions. Many local rappers seem happy to spread their messages on non-profit Web sites where anyone with a PC can download the music and pass it around.

**1. Read the first two paragraphs and list the rap issues expressed in:**

North America	South America	Africa	Europe
---------------	---------------	--------	--------

**2. Answer the following questions:**

1. Explain how hip-hop has changed within the years. What may account for this change?



2. What links could you suggest between hip-hop, graffiti and break-dancing?
3. In your opinion, what word best defines rap music: rhyme, beat, verbal skill, language, dialect, storytelling, social criticism?
4. If you wanted to create your own rap song, what aspect would you try to give importance to?
5. What seems to be local rappers' main concern nowadays? Do you think they will stick to their ideals?
6. What do you associate hip-hop with?

#### **ADDITIONAL READING 4**

**Comment on the different points of view on classical and pop music in each case below, providing arguments to support or refute the given point of view or giving another point of view.**

##### **For and Against Classical Music**

*For:* Classical music gives the listener a keen sensual delight. This music creates a special mood. It is wonderful to dream and meditate to this music. The metallic monotonous beat of jazz or the shrill shouts of pop singers: what are they in comparison with this special miraculous world created by sensitive talented men? Classical music has a deep intellectual appeal.

Classical music creates a special spiritual world for the listener which immensely enriches his inner life and makes him happy.

*Against:* Classical music is a complicated art: it is difficult to find one's way in it.

Classical music is also an exclusive art: most people don't like or understand it; that's why it is not popular. The very length of most classical pieces can send any listener to sleep. People want the kind of music to which they can dance or just talk to friends. It should be simple, cheerful and up-to-date.

Pop music and jazz also create a special spiritual world for the listener, and this world is full of dynamism, harmony, sensuality. Jazz music, for example, has the advantage of extreme sincerity.

## **For and Against Pop Music**

**For:** Pop music is the music of the young who search for new rhythms and new styles and reject the music of the past that is forced on them by the older generation.

The new rhythms are full of vigour and force: just what appeals to young people. The tunes are snappy and easily caught.

The words of the songs deal with the young people's world: their hopes, dreams, disappointments and joys.

The very popularity of the genre speaks in its favour. It attracts great masses of young people. Why should we deprive them of the joy they obviously get from this music?

**Against:** Before rejecting the old rhythms and styles, one should know something about them. Most pop-music fans don't.

The rhythms may be new and vigorous, but they lack variety. The tunes are mostly primitive and as easily forgotten as caught.

The words of some of the songs are absolutely senseless, sometimes verging on the idiotic.

Medical research has proved that the volume of sound produced by powerful amplifiers at some pop concerts does great damage both to the sense of hearing and to the nervous system. Indeed, cases of mass hysteria are not at all unusual at pop concerts. Are we bringing up a generation of half-deaf neurotics?

**1. Work in pairs and make up dialogues based on the information from the text.**

**2. Have a round-table talk on the topic "Classical music? Jazz? Pop music? Why not all of them?" Summarize the results.**

**3. Prepare a report about your favourite composer, singer, musician or group.**

# UNIT 13 My Future Profession

---

## Vocabulary

according to something	receptive to new ideas
strengths and weaknesses	a quick mind
vocation	to be responsible
commitment	to be well-educated
to be challenging	to have a good command of something
to choose one's career	to be aware of something
to get a job	speaking frankly / frankly
career prospects	speaking
to make a decision	to be self-confident
to carry out a decision	a long-term goal
to manage people	to do one's best
to be ambitious	to promote
employer	to be prestigious
employee	to be demanded
income	to be well-paid
promotion	conductor
profit	variety actor
to dismiss	leader of a folklore choir
to quit	to take into account
to retire	to earn money
to require	inner satisfaction
profound knowledge	to achieve success
culture studies	to succeed
interpreter	leader of a brass band
art critic	to graduate from
to possess	competitive
quality	experience
to deal with	heritage
to be sociable	
managing skills	

## Pre-reading Activities

### 1. Answer the following questions:

1. Was choosing your future career a difficult thing for you? What were your motives?

2. Where will you be able to work when you graduate from the university?
3. What qualities should a good professional in your field possess?
4. Do well-paid jobs often mean monotonous and hard work?
5. Do you want to become famous?
6. Do you believe in your future success? What can you do to achieve it?
7. Do you have a professional dream? What is it?

**2.1 Point out the most important factors in choosing your job. Put them in order of importance and explain your choice:**

work which is useful to society	dealing with children
good salary or wages	responsibility
opportunities to meet different people	the chance of promotion
opportunities to travel	good career prospects
flexible hours	good working conditions
interesting and not boring work	other factors – <i>what?</i>

**2.2 In your opinion, which jobs or professions fit your criteria? Does the job that you have or that you hope to have fit them? Does the job of your parents/friends/relatives fit them?**

**Reading Activities**

**Read the text about your future profession and be ready to speak on the topic:**

**CHOOSING A CAREER**

I think that choosing a career and getting a job are two of the most important things any person does in a lifetime. There are a lot of career prospects nowadays. According to the official statistics law and financial careers are the most prestigious and demanded. No less popular are journalism, international tourism and language careers. But I am fond of arts, and that is why I decided to enter the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts which prepares highly skilled specialists in the national cultural sphere. When choosing my future profession I tried to be realistic about my strengths and weaknesses.

## **An Artist of Folk Crafts**

When I graduate from the university I'll be an artist of folk crafts. I am sure that it isn't just a job; it's a vocation, a special call from God. The profession of an artist is really challenging and rather ambitious. It requires a lot of energy and enthusiasm, and of course perfect knowledge of fine and applied arts (drawing, painting, engraving, chasing, forging, ceramics, wood-carving, cloth-weaving) and profound knowledge of a lot of sciences. That is why at the university we study such specialized and non-specialized subjects as native and foreign languages, drawing and painting, history of Belarusian art and culture, psychology and pedagogy and many others. As an artist I should be able to distinguish the shades of colours and feel the texture of materials. While creating my future masterpieces I should combine my own originality and the experiences of previous generations. This will make each piece of decorative applied art a unique one.

Speaking frankly, I think that I am a talented, creative, self-confident and ambitious person and I wish to become famous one day. Though I'll be able to work in our Republic's clubs and palaces of culture, in different educational establishments as an interior decorator or a teacher of folk handicraft, my dream is to establish my own artistic studio where I could create and teach gifted children. It will give me self-satisfaction from a job well-done, money and recognition.

No doubt, folk crafts play an important role in the cultural life of the Republic of Belarus and our government pays great attention to the preservation and development of folk craft traditions. The activity of folk artists is encouraged by organizing different artistic contests and exhibitions. I hope that I will make my personal contribution to the flourishing of Belarusian culture and arts in future.

### **Are these sentences true or false?**

1. The profession of an artist is quite simple.
2. Folk crafts play an important role in the cultural life of Belarus.
3. At the university we study only specialized subjects.
4. My future profession is a special call from God.
5. To create my future masterpieces I just have to work a lot.

### **Match the English words with their Russian equivalents:**

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. forging      | a. ТАЛАНТЛИВЫЙ |
| 2. vocation     | b. ВКЛАД       |
| 3. shade        | c. КОНКУРС     |
| 4. contribution | d. ПРИЗНАНИЕ   |
| 5. experience   | e. ОТТЕНОК     |
| 6. chasing      | f. СОХРАНЕНИЕ  |
| 7. recognition  | g. ЧЕКАНКА     |
| 8. gifted       | h. ПРИЗВАНИЕ   |
| 9. preservation | i. КОВКА       |
| 10. contest     | k. ОПЫТ        |

### **A Manager in the Sphere of Culture**

I decided to become a manager in the social and cultural sphere.

I am a real leader and I am not afraid of making and carrying out decisions, managing people and their activities. I think that the profession of a manager in the sphere of culture is very creative, really challenging and rather ambitious. It requires much energy and enthusiasm, and of course profound knowledge of a lot of sciences. That is why at the university we study such specialized and non-specialized subjects as native and foreign languages, history of Belarusian art and culture, management, marketing, advertising, the history and theory of international relations, culture studies.

I think a good manager in the sphere of culture is a mixture of a manager, a specialist in the culture studies, an interpreter and an art critic. Managers in the cultural sphere should possess a lot of qualities. They deal with people so they have to be sociable and positive. Of course, they should have managing skills and be extremely responsible. They should be well-educated people, having a good command of at least 2 languages, and being aware of cultural differences of various nations.

When I graduate from the university I will have a chance to choose among state and private establishments of culture and arts, tourist and advertising agencies and firms, mass media. I will be able to work as an art manager, a manager of video and cinema studios or fine art studios, an administrator of show business or a manager of tourist business.

Speaking frankly, I think that I am a talented, creative, self-confident and ambitious person and I wish to become famous one day. My long-term goal is to become the best manager in the cultural sphere in our country. I promise to do my best to develop cultural contacts of Belarus with other countries of the world; to promote young and professional artists, Belarusian cultural organizations and their projects.

**Find the pairs of words with the close meaning:**

Sphere, to manage, challenging, profound, field, to deal with, sociable, to supervise, responsible, self-confident, to treat, goal, thorough, to promote, friendly, assured, thought-provoking, trustworthy, purpose, to support.

**In pairs or small groups discuss advantages and disadvantages of being managers in the sphere of culture.**

**A Restorer**

I think the best kind of job is a well-paid hobby. My love for art determined the choice of my future profession. I entered the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts to become an artist and a restorer of decorative and applied arts. To tell you the truth when I was choosing my future profession I took into account not only my interests but also the possibilities to earn good money, chances for promotion and of course the opportunities to feel the inner satisfaction from a job well-done.

I am sure that it is not just a job – it's a vocation, a special call from God. The profession of an artist and a restorer is really challenging and rather ambitious. It requires a lot of energy and enthusiasm, and of course perfect knowledge of a lot of sciences. That is why at the university we study such specialized and non-specialized subjects as native and foreign languages, history of art and civilizations, archaeology, ethnology, philosophy; conservation-restoration history and technology; information technology; theory and management in the cultural sphere and many others.

I think a good restorer is a mixture of an artist, a painter and an art critic. Restorers should possess a lot of qualities. They deal with pieces of art so they have to be aware of their cultural value. Of

course, they should be very accurate and scrupulous for the masterpieces not to lose their original flavour. They must be responsible people as restorers make and carry out decisions concerning conditions of storing, presenting, transporting and studying of pieces of art. They must be extremely patient, attentive and well-educated.

When I graduate from the university I will have a chance to choose among state and private establishments of culture and arts. I will be able to work as an artist and a restorer in museums, galleries, scientific laboratories, in private conservation enterprises or independently.

Art has been an inseparable part of human life and culture since the dawn of human civilization. No doubt, art plays an important role in the cultural life of the Republic of Belarus and our government pays great attention to the preservation and development of Belarusian and world cultural heritage. I decided to devote my life to the preservation of cultural heritage for the future generations and I am sure I'll succeed because I am a talented, creative, self-confident and ambitious person and I wish to become famous one day. Frankly speaking, my dream is to establish my own scientific laboratory or a restoration workshop. It will give me self-satisfaction from a job well-done, money and recognition.

### **What's the English for:**

наследие, неотъемлемый, осознавать, зарабатывать, терпеливый, призвание, искусствовед, декоративно-прикладное искусство, мастерская, произведение искусства.

### **Answer the following questions:**

1. What determined the choice of your future profession?
2. What did you take into account choosing your future profession?
3. What does the profession of a restorer require?
4. What specialized subjects do you study?
5. What qualities should restorers possess?
6. Where will you be able to work after graduation?
7. What is your professional dream?



## **A Musician**

My love for music determined the choice of my future profession. I entered the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts to become a musician (a conductor, a variety actor, a leader of a folklore choir) and a teacher. To tell you the truth, when choosing my future profession I took into account not only my interests but also the possibilities to earn good money and the opportunities to feel the inner satisfaction from a job well-done.

I am sure that it is not just a job – it's a vocation. To be a real musician you should have an ear for music, talent, and a desire for perfection. I think I have all of these things. Musicians (conductors, singers) should possess a lot of qualities. They deal with people so they have to be sociable and positive. Of course, they should be extremely responsible, patient and well-educated.

The profession of a musician is really stressful and challenging. It requires a lot of energy and enthusiasm and of course perfect knowledge of a lot of sciences. That is why at the university we study such specialized and non-specialized subjects as native and foreign languages, pedagogy, theory of music (sol-fa, harmony, polyphony); methodology; direction; folklore instruments; methodology, history and theory of choral creative work; choir and orchestra practice and many others. As for me, I learn to play the saxophone (the trumpet, the clarinet ...).

When I graduate from the university I'll be able to work as a leader or a musician of a variety orchestra, a leader of a brass band, a conductor of a folk orchestra, a leader of a folklore music group, a teacher of special subjects in the educational establishments.

Music plays an integral part in my life. Music is something that fascinates me, gives me strength and vitality and creates an optimistic approach to life. Music is a perfect combination of pleasure, intellectual work and entertainment. Music gives us a unique chance to stir our imagination, to hear the voices, thoughts and feelings of those people who lived centuries ago. No doubt, music plays an important role in the cultural life of the Republic of Belarus and our government pays great attention to the preservation and development of Belarusian heritage. I decided to devote my life to music and I am sure I'll succeed because I think that I am a talented, creative, self-confident and ambitious person and I wish to become famous one day. I understand that success is the result of

hard work and perseverance. They say practice makes perfect. And I am doing my best to achieve success.

**Make up your own sentences in English and in Russian using active vocabulary.**

**Speak on the challenges of working in the sphere of musical arts.**

### **A Librarian**

I think that the best kind of job is a well-paid hobby. I love reading books and literature means a lot in my life that is why I decided to enter the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts to become a librarian and a bibliographer. In ancient times the profession of a librarian was the most honourable and responsible one and nowadays this tradition continues.

I think that the profession of a librarian is very interesting and requires profound knowledge of a lot of sciences. That is why at the university we study such specialized and non-specialized subjects as native and foreign languages, programming and creation of websites, information technology (IT), management, marketing, world and Belarusian literature, psychology and sociology, history and theory of bibliography, librarianship, cataloguing. We are taught to deal with library problems, conduct small investigations and we'll have some work experience in libraries. As Aristotle once said: "The roots of education are bitter but the fruit is sweet" and that is true.

I think a good librarian should possess a lot of qualities. They communicate with people so they have to be sociable and positive. Of course, they should be extremely responsible, well-educated people, having a good command of at least 2 languages.

When I graduate from the university I will be able to work at various libraries in our country. I will have a chance to open an incredible world of literature to different people.

It's my firm belief that a book is one of the greatest wonders in the world. It helps to form the character and the world outlook, to understand life better. Books educate and entertain us, help us to understand our deepest dreams and fears. Thanks to books we can talk to people who lived in different ages and countries. Through reading books we hear their voices, thoughts and feelings.

**Put the appropriate word or phrase in the spaces below:**

1. In ancient times the profession of a librarian was ... one.
2. The profession of a librarian requires ... .
3. A good librarian should ... a lot of qualities.
4. I will have a chance to open ... to different people.
5. A book is one of ... in the world.
6. Books help us to understand our ... .

**Get ready to speak about the prospects of librarians in the modern world.**

**An Art Critic**

My love for arts determined the choice of my future profession. I entered the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts to become an art critic. I have chosen this specialty because it gives great possibilities to widen my outlook in the field of art.

Specialists in art criticism should know how to compare and analyze different kinds of art, to find differences and things in common. They also should be able to explain the sense and find the gist.

The profession of an art critic is really challenging. It requires a lot of energy and enthusiasm and of course perfect knowledge of a lot of sciences. That is why at the university we study such specialized and non-specialized subjects as native and foreign languages, history and theory of different kinds of art, screen culture, design, cinematography, photo art, animated films, heraldry and numismatics, material culture of Belarus, art psychoanalysis.

When I graduate from the university I'll be able to work as a guide in museums or tour agencies, as a teacher of world artistic culture, as a manager of literary department at music theatres, as an art critic of the international centres or funds.

Art criticism is dedicated to the analysis and evaluation of works of art. It is interpretive, involving the effort to understand a particular work of art from a theoretical perspective and to establish its significance in the history of art. The critic is often faced with a choice: to defend old standards, values, and hierarchies against new ones or to defend the new against the old.

I decided to devote my life to art and I am sure I'll succeed because I think that I am a talented, creative, self-confident and

ambitious person. I understand that success is the result of hard work and perseverance. They say practice makes perfect. And I am doing my best to achieve success.

**Find a word or expression in the text which fits the following definition:**

1. Actively seeking success, status, etc.
2. Expression of human creative talent.
3. Having similar characteristics.
4. To examine the nature of something in order to understand or explain it.
5. The main point of something.
6. The art of making films.
7. Forming an idea of the quality or value of something.
8. A system with grades of status from the lowest to the highest.

**Speak on the prospects and challenges of your future career.**

**A Manager in Heritage Tourism**

I decided to become a manager in heritage tourism.

I think the profession of a manager in heritage tourism is very creative, really challenging and rather ambitious. It requires a lot of energy and enthusiasm, and of course profound knowledge of a lot of sciences. That is why at the university we study such specialized and non-specialized subjects as native and foreign languages, history of Belarus, world history, protection of historical and cultural heritage, tourism management, tourism marketing, theory and history of tourism, economics of tourism, basics of conservation and restoration of monuments of history and culture.

Tourism has grown at an accelerated pace over the last few decades. One of the pillars of the tourism industry has been mankind's inherent desire to see and learn about the cultural identity of different parts of the world. In domestic tourism, cultural heritage stimulates national pride in one's history. In international tourism, cultural heritage stimulates respect and understanding of other cultures and, as a consequence, promotes peace. Cultural heritage attractions are, by nature, unique and fragile. Therefore, it is fundamental to study how to develop these sites while protecting and preserving them for the long term.

In the course of studies I will learn how to evaluate destinations' cultural and historic resources and attractions and creatively incorporate them into a comprehensive tourism promotion strategy that will address the visitors' unique expectations. I will be able to understand the motivations and expectations of tourists.

The course of studies will help to learn how to work more effectively with representatives from the arts, academe, government, and non-profit sectors to create a cohesive and unforgettable "product" that will keep visitors coming back year after year. I will learn how to preserve the authenticity of resources, how to better inform, entertain, and educate the tourist about unique attractions, how to prevent the degradation of cultural and historic sites that could result from increased tourism.

When I graduate from the university I will be able to work at various travel companies and museums, as a tour guide, or as a tourism manager.

### **Find English equivalents:**

развлекать, оценивать, ожидания, наследие, гордость, столп, хрупкий, место назначения, человечество, предотвратить, сохранить.

### **Advertise your specialty to possible future applicants.**

#### **A Choreographer**

My long-term passion for and participation in dance determined the choice of my future profession. I entered the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts to become a choreographer. To tell you the truth, when choosing my future profession I took into account not only my interests but also the possibilities to earn good money and the opportunities to feel the inner satisfaction from a job well-done.

I am sure that it is not just a job – it's a vocation. Choreographers must listen intently to the piece of music that is being used, and work out the timing and the feel of the different dance steps. A lot of time is spent inventing new dance moves and editing routines. They also work very closely with the dancers, teaching them by example and by spoken instruction. Choreographers are to be sure that the dance is perfect for the audience to see.

Through their dance experience, choreographers acquire knowledge of dance theory. They also learn how the body reacts to various movements. They must be able to select the dancers best suited to a particular style of dance, as well as motivate and direct a company of dancers.

The profession of a choreographer is really stressful and challenging. It requires a lot of patience, stamina and concentration. At the university we study a lot of specialized and non-specialized subjects, such as native and foreign languages, history of dance and choreographic work analysis, choreography, classical dance, Belarusian dance, acting techniques, methods of teaching special subjects, dance stage design, costume design.

To be successful as a choreographer one should have or develop such aptitudes as creativity and flair for ideas, enthusiasm, resilience, imagination, excellent communication skills, and the ability to build productive working relationships with people under stress.

When I graduate from the university I'll be able to work as a dancer, a choreographer, a trainer, a director of professional and amateur dance groups. My choreography aim is to form my own dance company.

**Find the antonyms to the following words:**

Disgust, disappointed, negligence, elementary, ignorance, depression, inaccurate, indifference, identical, to copy.

**Speak on the challenges of the career in choreography.**

**An Expert in Social and Cultural Activity**

I think the best kind of job is a well-paid hobby. I love dealing with people, and this fact determined the choice of my future profession. I entered the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts to become an expert in social and cultural activity. To tell you the truth, when I was choosing my future profession I took into account the opportunities to feel the inner satisfaction from a job well-done.

I am sure that it is not just a job – it's a vocation, a special call from God. The profession of an expert in social and cultural activity requires a lot of energy and enthusiasm, and of course perfect

knowledge of different sciences and a lot of training. That is why at the university we study such specialized and non-specialized subjects as native and foreign languages, pedagogy, psychology, sociology, theory and history of social and cultural activity, technologies of social and cultural activity; management, marketing, financing, advertising at the establishments of social and cultural sphere; theory and practice of public relations, etc.

The basic personality features necessary for social and cultural work are the following: tolerance, empathy, social commitment, ability to make decisions, self-confidence, and others.

When I graduate from the university I will be able to work at the establishments in the sphere of culture and arts, in the sphere of tourism, sport and recreation, at the institutions of extended education.

Social work is defined as the system of organized activities carried on by a person with particular knowledge, competence and values, designed to help individuals and groups in their social environment. Future experts in social and cultural activity should be able to arrange recreation for people of different ages. One of their tasks is to develop innovative projects. I feel I can make a contribution to the development of social and cultural sphere.

**Give the English equivalents to the following words and expressions and use them in your own sentences:**

учитывать, ценности, призвание, внести вклад, реклама, отдых, подготовка, возможность, организовать.

**Advertise your specialty to possible future applicants.**

**A Director**

My love for arts determined the choice of my future profession. I entered the Belarusian State University of Culture and Arts to become a drama director (a director of public holidays). To tell you the truth, when choosing my future profession I took into account not only my interests but also the possibilities to earn good money and the opportunities to feel the inner satisfaction from a job well-done.

I am sure that it is not just a job – it's a vocation. To be a real director you should have your own artistic style. The directors of amateur drama company work with amateur actors. The directors of

public holidays take part in organizing festivals, festivities and different kinds of anniversary celebrations. I find my future occupation interesting, complex and important.

The profession of a director is really stressful and challenging. It requires a lot of energy and enthusiasm and of course perfect knowledge of a lot of sciences. That is why at the university we study such specialized and non-specialized subjects as native and foreign languages, pedagogy, holiday directing, basics of directing and acting, basics of playwriting and screenwriting, traditional Belarusian holiday cultures, stage speech, stage movement, theatre criticism, methods of teaching special subjects.

When I graduate from the university I'll be able to work as a director of a drama group or amateur clubs, as a theatre actor, as a host of television and radio programmes, as a director of different festivities.

Theatre directors have responsibility for the overall practical and creative interpretation of a dramatic script or musical score. They work closely with their creative and production teams, the performers and the producer to create a performance which connects with the audience. Some directors are also writers, designers and performers and may write, devise, design and act in their own work.

You will need to show: an ability to express yourself both orally and in writing and to be creative, persuasive and prepared to take artistic risks; excellent negotiation and interpersonal skills; self-motivation and the ability to motivate and inspire others; team working and time management skills; an ability to develop innovative ideas and to solve problems creatively and practically; organizational and research skills; dedication and enthusiasm.

To perform the job of a public holidays director successfully, a person must be creative, positive, enthusiastic, engaging and able to encourage people to participate. He or she must be a team player, with the ability to communicate with all ages, comfortable in a casual and group environment; besides it's important to have a positive attitude with a can-do desire to succeed.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What determined the choice of your future profession?
2. What did you take into account choosing your future profession?



3. What does the profession of a director require?
4. What specialized subjects do you study?
5. What qualities should directors possess?
6. Where will you be able to work after graduation?
7. What is your professional dream?

**Give the Russian equivalents to the following words and expressions:**

To take into account, vocation, amateur, challenging, host, overall, performer, to devise, persuasive, dedication.

## **ADDITIONAL READING ACTIVITIES**

### **ADDITIONAL READING 1**

**Read and analyze the example of a CV. Write your own CV according to the scheme:**

**Anna Filanovich**

**Legal Permanent Resident:** the Republic of Belarus

2-90 Avrorovskaya str.

Minsk 220028

**The Republic of Belarus**

- 375 17 286 13 55
- +375 29 140 13 84 (cell phone)
- anna\_f@mail.ru

**Date of birth:** September 22, 1989

**Place of birth:** Minsk, the Republic of Belarus

**Citizenship:** the Republic of Belarus

**Objective**

Searching for a position that will allow to apply and develop acquired language skills and knowledge and gain new experience by doing an active and interesting job.

**Education**

**2007–2012:** Minsk State Linguistic University, English Faculty

## **Work experience**

**08.2006** – the teacher of the English language, Minsk state architectural building college.

## **Personal qualities**

Hardworking, responsible, open-minded, able to learn, disciplined, creative, polite.

*Additional information:*

- Bachelor's degree in arts
- Experience in communicating with native speakers (06.2009–09.2009)

## **References**

Available upon request.

## **ADDITIONAL READING 2**

**Read and analyze the following examples of different job interviews. In pairs make up dialogues of your own:**

*Example Job Interview 1: Administrator*

Mr. E: Welcome to our company for the administration position.

Mr. F: Nice to be here.

Mr. E: Tell me about yourself.

Mr. F: Well, as you can see from my resume, I have worked in business administration for several years and have an MBA. I want to have a good salary and I know this company pays well.

Mr. E: I see. And what do you do in your free time?

Mr. F: I like to play pool and watch television.

Mr. E: What do you like on TV?

Mr. F: I like to watch documentaries.

Mr. E: I see. And if we decide to hire you, when can you start?

Mr. F: Immediately.

Mr. E: Very good. You seem to be the kind of employee we are looking for. I will let you know of our decision by e-mail.

Mr. F: Great. I look forward to hearing from you.

*Example Job Interview 2: Advertising*

Ms. K: Welcome to XXX advertising.

Ms. L: My pleasure.

Ms. K: So what kind of advertising experience do you have?

Ms. L: I worked for CCCCC company for five years. I helped edit and make newspaper ads. We tried to make our ads interesting, as you can see from my portfolio.

Ms. K: I see. I think we can use you.

Ms. L: I can make an interesting commercial on any subject.

Ms. K: Yes, well, let me explain the pay structure. The pay is \$40 per hour plus bonuses for successful ads/commercials. We have a lot of clients so you will have no shortage of work. Are you available to work overtime?

Ms. L: Yes, I like to work hard and I like to make money. That's why I am applying for a job with your company.

Ms. K: However we do ask that you commit for at least five years and there is a contract to sign.

Ms. L: I have researched your company thoroughly and I am convinced it is the right career move for me.

Ms. K: OK, welcome aboard.

Ms. L: I hope this is the beginning of a great working relationship.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

### LITERATURE

1. *Агабекян, И. П.* Английский язык в сфере обслуживания – English for students in service sector, tourism, and hospitality / И. П. Агабекян. – Изд. 2-е, стер. – Ростов н/Д : Феникс, 2013. – 377, [1] с. – (Высшее образование).
2. Английский язык средств массовой информации [Электронный ресурс] = Mass Media English : практикум для самостоятельной работы студентов : сетевое электрон. учеб. изд. / Ю. В. Бекреева [и др.] ; Минский гос. лингвист. ун-т ; рец. Ю. Н. Кордубан. – Минск : МГЛУ, 2020. – 82 с. – Режим доступа: <http://e-lib.mslu.by/handle/edoc/4240>
2. *Бейзеров, В. А.* Английский язык для сферы туризма и гостиничного бизнеса = English for Tourism and Hotel Industry / В. А. Бейзеров. – Ростов н/Д : Феникс, 2011. – 347 с. : ил. – (Без репетитора).
4. *Голицынский, Ю. Б.* Spoken English: пособие по устной речи для средних классов гимназий и школ с углубленным изучением английского языка / Ю. Б. Голицынский. – СПб. : КАРО, 2019. – 416 с. – (Английский язык для школьников).
5. *Исаева, Т. Е.* Речевая коммуникация в туризме : учеб. пособие с материалами на английском языке / Т. Е. Исаева. – 2-е изд. – М. : Издательско-торговая корпорация «Дашкови К°»; Издательство «Наука-Спектр», 2015. – 240 с.
6. *Коньшева, А. В.* Read and speak about Belarus = Читай и говори о Беларуси / А. В. Коньшева, Н. В. Сасина, М. М. Сироткина. – 2-е изд. – Минск : Четыре четверти, 2007. – 254 с.
7. *Уайатт, Р.* Английская лексика. Англия и английский язык для иностранцев = Check your English vocabulary for living in the UK : учеб. пособие / Родон Уайатт. – М. : АСТ, 2010. – 160 с.
8. *Хведченя, Л. В.* Английский язык : базовый курс / Л. В. Хведченя. – Минск : Совр. школа, 2009. – 558, [1] с.
9. *Хведченя, Л. В.* Comprehensive English Grammar = Грамматика английского языка : учеб. пособие для студентов высших учебных заведений по неязыковым специальностям / Л. А. Хведченя. – 2-е изд. – Минск : Издательство Гревцова, 2013. – 478, [1] с.

10. *British culture in brief: о британской культуре вкратце: тексты для чтения и обсуждения : пособие / Т. П. Бируля, С. Г. Безмен. – Минск : Беларус. гос. аграр. техн. ун-т, 2009. – 98 с.*

11. *Clare, A. Speakout: Pre-Intermediate: Student's Book / A. Clare, J. J. Wilson. – Essex, England : Pearson Education Limited, 2016. –176 p.*

12. *Crace, A. New Total English: Pre-Intermediate Students' book / A. Crace, R. Acklam. – Essex, England: Pearson Education Limited, 2011. – 149 p.*

13. *Falla, T. Solutions. Elementary : Student's Book / Tim Falla, Paul A. Davies. – Oxford : Oxford University Press, 2015. – 137 p.*

14. *Falla, T. Solutions. Elementary : Student's Book / Tim Falla, Paul A. Davies. – Third ed. – Oxford : Oxford University Press, 2018. – 143 p.*

15. *Falla, T. Solutions. Pre-Intermediate : Student Book / Tim Falla, Paul A. Davies. – 20th ed. – Oxford : Oxford University Press, 2015. – 133 p.*

16. *Redston, C. Face2Face: Pre-intermediate Second edition, Student's Book / Chris Redston, Gillie Cunningham. – Cambridge University Press. – 170 p.*

17. *Sharman, E. Across Cultures [Electronic recourse] / E. Sharman. – England: Pearson Education Limited, 2004. – 1 электрон. диск.*

18. *Solutions. Elementary : Teacher's Book / Marta Uminska [и др.]. – Oxford : Oxford University Press, 2015. – 142 p.*

19. *Solutions: pre-intermediate : Teacher's book / Anita Omelanczuk [и др.]. – 20th ed. – Oxford : Oxford University Press, 2011. – 143 p.*

## **ELECTRONIC ENCYCLOPEDIAS**

1. Encyclopedia Britannica
2. Microsoft Encarta Encyclopedia
3. World Book Multimedia Encyclopedia

## **ELECTRONIC DICTIONARIES**

1. Collins English Dictionary
2. LINGVO
3. Oxford Dictionary

## Appendices

### Приложение А. Существительное

<b>Русский язык</b>	<b>Английский язык</b>
<b>Множественное число</b>	<b>Единственное число (it is/was)</b>
совет(ы) наличные шахматы часы одежда данные, факты фрукты волосы сведения, данные драгоценности знания макароны машинное оборудование деньги новости(ь) продукты успех(и) покупки каникулы часы	advice cash chess clock(s) clothing evidence fruit(s) hair information jewellery knowledge macaroni machinery money news produce progress shopping vacation watch(es)
<b>Собирательные или парные</b>	<b>Множественное число (they are/were)</b>
бинокль скот одежда содержание, содержимое очки товар(ы) джинсы люди полиция ножницы шорты лестница брюки зарплата	binoculars cattle clothes contents glasses, spectacles goods jeans people police scissors shorts stairs trousers wages

**Степени сравнения прилагательных**

Формы	Положительная	Сравнительная	Превосходная
Простые	cold	colder (than)	the coldest
	hot	hotter (than)	the hottest
	easy	easier (than)	the easiest
	clever simple narrow	cleverer (than) simpler (than) narrower (than)	the cleverest the simplest the narrowest
Сложные	interesting	more interesting (than)	the most interesting
Неправильные	little	less (than)	the least
	many / much	more (than)	the most
	good bad	better (than) worse (than)	the best the worst
	far  old	farther (than) further (than) older (than) elder (than)	the farthest the furthest the oldest the eldest
Другие	as + adjective + as He is as tall as she. Он такой же высокий, как и она. not so / as ... as She is not so/as tall as he. Она не такая высокая, как он.		
Не имеют степеней сравнения	left, single, absent, wooden и другие		

**Порядок следования прилагательных в группе существительного**

Качество	Размер/ возраст/ форма	Цвет	Проис- хождение	При- частие II	Мате- риал	Сущест- вительное
clean nice	big old round	white red	English French	handmade	metal plastic	N
beautiful	old	brown	French	handmade	oak	cupboard

<i>Adverbs of Frequency</i>		
How often?		How many times?
<p><b>always</b> всегда I always go to work by bus. Я всегда езжу на работу на автобусе.</p>	<p><b>always</b> (all the time)</p>	<p><b>once</b> a day <b>twice</b> a month <b>three times</b> a year...</p>
<p><b>often</b> часто Do you see your parents often? Ты часто видишь своих родителей?</p>		<p>I go swimming once a week. Я хожу плавать один раз в неделю.</p>
<p><b>frequently</b> часто The train stopped frequently. Поезд часто останавливался.</p>		<p><b>every day</b> <b>every other day</b> <b>every three months</b>...</p>
<p><b>usually</b> обычно I usually feel nervous before an interview. Я обычно нервничаю перед интервью.</p>		<p>They watch TV every evening. Они каждый вечер смотрят телевизор.</p>
<p><b>normally</b> обычно Meetings are normally held three or four times a year. Собрания обычно проводятся три или четыре раза в год.</p>		<p><b>hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly</b></p>
<p><b>sometimes</b> иногда I go there sometimes, but not often. Я хожу иногда туда, но не часто.</p>		<p>The post is delivered here twice daily. Почту сюда доставляют дважды в день.</p>
<p><b>occasionally</b> изредка, временами He visited us occasionally. Он изредка навещал нас.</p>		<p>How long? I've <b>already</b> done it. Я это уже сделал.</p>
<p><b>seldom</b> редко They are seldom at home. Они редко бывают дома.</p>		<p><i>He's still asleep. Он еще спит.</i></p>
<p><b>rarely</b> редко. I rarely eat meat. Я редко ем мясо.</p>		<p>She hasn't answered my letter <b>yet</b>. Она еще не ответила на мое письмо.</p>
<p><b>never</b> никогда We never saw him again. Мы никогда его больше не видели.</p>		<p><b>never</b> (at no time)</p> <p><b>any more, any longer, no longer</b></p> <p>He doesn't live here any more. He is not a young man any longer. He no longer lives here.</p>



**Действительный залог**

1 Когда происходит действие	2 Какое действие происходит	Сказуемое		
		ВСП глагол Согласовать с подлежащим	Временные признаки	С м ы с л о -вой глагол
Present (am, is, are; have, has)  Past (was, were, had)  Future (shall, will - В придаточных времени КОГДА и условия ЕСЛИ не употребляется)	Simple / Indefinite (обычное, регулярное, повторяю- щееся, общеизвест- ный факт)	—	Usually, often, seldom, always, never, sometimes, as a rule, every day, from time to time, twice a day, frequently, normally, occasionally, rarely	V 1 (V1-s: он, она, оно) <b>ДЕЛАЕТ</b>
		—	Yesterday, an hour ago, in 1995, last week/month/ year, the other day	V2-ED <b>ДЕЛАЛ</b>
		<b>shall/will</b> будет	Tomorrow, next week/month/ year, in two days, soon	V1 <b>ДЕЛАТЬ</b>
	Continuous (ПРОДОЛ- ЖАЕТ ДЕЛАТЬ в определен- ный момент)	BE	Now, at the moment, still, while, at two o'clock, when I returned, since 5 till 7, for the whole evening	V1-ING <b>ДЕЛАЮ- ЩИЙ</b>

	Perfect (СДЕЛАЛ к определен- ному моменту, результат)	HAVE	Already, just, yet, lately, ever, never, by the 1st of May, by then, by 6 o'clock, by that time, several times, after, today, this morning/week/ month/year, since yesterday, since Monday, since (then), since he came, since 1995	V3-ed <b>СДЕЛАН- НЫЙ</b>
	Perfect Continuous (ДЕЛАЛ и ПРОДОЛ- ЖАЕТ ДЕЛАТЬ уже определен- ный проме- жуток времени)	<b>HAVE + been</b>	For two years, all day long, for a long time, since (then), since 1995, since morning, since two o'clock, since he came	V1-ing (глаголы BE, KNOW не употре- бляются)

### Страдательный залог

Время действия	Тип действия	Сказуемое	
		ВСП глагол	Смысловой глагол
<b>Present Past Future</b>	Simple	<b>BE</b>	<b>V3-ed</b>
	Continuous (нет Future Continuous)	<b>BE + being</b>	
	Perfect	<b>HAVE + been</b>	
	Perfect Continuous	<b>нет</b>	

**Past** \_\_\_\_\_ **Present** \_\_\_\_\_ **Future** \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_о\_\_\_\_\_о\_\_\_\_\_о\_\_\_\_\_

Действие, происходящее в Past  
 и предшествующее другому,  
 употребляется в Past Perfect

**Условные обозначения:**

**BE** – изменяемая часть сказуемого

**been** – неизменяемая часть сказуемого

**V1** – Infinitive; **V2-ed** – Past Simple; **V3-ed** – Past Participle

*Приложение Е. Модальные глаголы*

<b>Can (could)</b>	Возможность совершить действие самому или испытать действие на себе.
<b>May (might)</b>	Просьба, разрешение, вероятность совершить действие.
<b>Must</b>	Субъективная, личная необходимость.
<b>Must not</b>	Запрещение, запрет.
<b>Have to</b>	Объективная, вынужденная необходимость (правило, ситуация).
<b>Be to</b>	Запланированная необходимость.
<b>Should</b>	Моральная необходимость – хорошо, правильно сделать это.
<b>Ought to</b>	Моральная необходимость.
<b>Would</b>	Обычное действие («бывало»), вежливая просьба.
<b>Needn't</b>	Отсутствие необходимости совершать действие.

*Заменители*

	<b>Present</b>	<b>Past</b>	<b>Future</b>
Модальный глагол	can	<b>could</b>	—
Заменители	am/is/are able to	was/were able to	shall/will be able to
Модальный глагол	must	—	—
Заменители	have/has to	had to	shall/will have to

*Verbs of Speaking*

Reporting verbs:

1. **to say (said, said)**

to say (to smb) that...: *He said that it was not true.*

to say smth (to smb): *He had said nothing to me about his meeting.*

in reported speech: *"Please come in", she said.*

## 2. to tell (told, told)

to tell smb smth about smth: *He told me nothing about it.*

to tell smb to do smth: *I told him to prepare another report.*

to tell smb that...: *He told me that he was a student.*

### Non-reporting verbs:

#### 1. to speak (spoke, spoken)

to speak (to/with smb) about smth: *I spoke to her about it.*

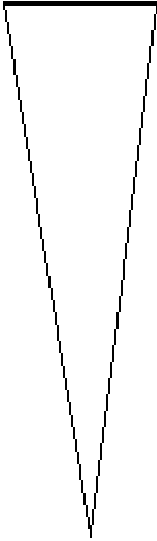
#### 2. to talk (talked, talked)

to talk (to/with smb) about smth: *Have you talked to him about it.*

### Приложение F. Местоимение

Личные		Притяжательные		Возвратные (-ся)
Именительный падеж (Кто, Что)	Объектный падеж (Кого, Что, Кому, Чему)	Зависимая форма (Чей – перед N)	Независимая форма (Чей – без N)	
I – я	me – меня, мне	my – мой, моя, мое, мои	mine	myself
you – ты	you – тебя, тебе	your – твой, твоя, твое, твои	yours	yourself
he – он	him – его, ему	his – его	his	himself
she – она	her – ее, ей	her – ее	hers	herself
it – он (-а, -о)	it – его, ее, ему, ей	its – его, ее	its	itself
we – мы	us – нас, нам	our – наш, наша, наше, наши	ours	ourselves
you – вы	you – вас, вам	your – ваш, ваша, ваше, ваши	yours	yourselves
they – они	them – их, им	their – их	theirs	themselves

Количественные местоимения		
Исчисляемые существительные	Перевод	Неисчисляемые существительные
<b>many</b> <b>few</b> (not many and not enough)	много мало	<b>much</b> <b>little</b>
<b>a few</b> (not many but enough)	несколько, немного, небольшое количество	<b>a little</b>

<b>Количество</b>		
<p>How many? (с исчисляемыми существительными)</p>	<p><b>all</b></p>  <p><b>none</b></p>	<p>How much? (с неисчисляемыми существительными)</p>
<p><i>Every, all</i> <b>Every</b> student/<b>All</b> the students came to the meeting.</p>		<p><i>All</i> He ate <b>all</b> the bread.</p>
<p><i>Most</i> <b>Most</b> of my friends came to the party.</p>		<p><i>Most</i> He spends <b>most</b> of his time reading.</p>
<p><i>Many</i> <b>Many</b> people walk to school.</p>		<p><i>Much</i> <b>Much</b> of what you say is true.</p>
<p><i>Some, several</i> <b>Some</b> of these apples taste sour.   <b>Several</b> people were waiting for the bus.</p>		<p><i>Some</i> There's <b>some</b> bread in the cupboard.</p>
<p><i>Not many, only a few, few</i> There are <b>not many/only a few</b> tickets left.   There are <b>few</b> children in this area.</p>		<p><i>A little, not much, little</i> There's only <b>a little/not much</b> room left.   Hurry up! There's <b>little</b> time</p>
<p><i>Not ... any, no, none</i> He couldn't answer <b>any</b> of the exam questions.   There are <b>no</b> eggs left; <b>none</b> at all.</p>		<p><i>Not ... any, no, none</i> He didn't give me <b>any</b> help.   There is <b>no</b> petrol in the car; <b>none</b> at all.</p>
<p><b><i>Some</i></b> and <b><i>any</i></b></p>	<p><b>Any</b> обычно используется вместо <b>some</b> в вопросах и отрицательных предложениях: Have you got <b>any</b> eggs/milk? No, I haven't got <b>any</b> eggs/milk?</p>	<p>Возможно также использовать <b>some</b> в вопросе, на который ожидается ответ «да»: Have you got <b>some</b> eggs/milk, please? Would you like <b>some</b> more coffee?</p>

**Many** и **much** употребляются в вопросительных и отрицательных предложениях. В утвердительных предложениях употребляются перед словами **very, too, so, as, how** или перед подлежащим.

В других случаях в утвердительных предложениях употребляются вместо:

– **Many** → a lot of, a great many, a good many;

– **Much** → a lot of, a great deal, a good deal.

*Приложение G. Союзы*

**Подчинительные:**

<p><b>Времени (time):</b>  after – после того как  as – когда, в то время как  as long as – пока  as soon as – как только  before – до, перед тем как  now – когда</p>	<p>since – с тех пор как  till – (до тех пор) пока  until – пока (не)  when – когда  whenever – когда бы ни  while – в то время как, пока</p>
<p><b>Места (place):</b>  whence – откуда  where – где</p>	<p>wherein – где  wherever – куда бы ни, где бы ни</p>
<p><b>Причины (cause or reason):</b>  as – так как  because – потому что  lest – чтобы не</p>	<p>since – поскольку  whereas – тогда как, поскольку  why – почему</p>
<p><b>Уступки (concession):</b>  although / though – хотя  even if / even though – хотя и, даже если</p>	<p>if / whether – ли  while – пока</p>
<p><b>Условия (condition):</b>  as – когда, по мере того как  except – кроме  if – если  in case – в случае, если</p>	<p>provided / providing (that) – при условии (что)  supposing – если (бы)  unless – если ... не</p>
<p><b>Образа действия (manner or degree):</b>  as – так как  as ... as – так (же) ... как (и)  as if / though – как будто / если бы</p>	<p>how – как  not so ... as – не такой как  so as – так как, с тем чтобы  than – чем</p>
<p><b>Цели (purpose):</b>  in order to / that – для того чтобы  lest – чтобы не</p>	<p>so that – чтобы  that – чтобы</p>

<b>Следствия (consequence):</b> as – так как for – ибо, так как so – поэтому	so as/that – чтобы, с тем чтобы that – что
---	---

**Сочинительные:**

and – и, а as well as – (а) также как (и) both... and – как... так (и) but – но either... or – или... или for – ибо, так как	neither... nor – ни... ни not only... but also – не только... но и or – или therefore – поэтому, следовательно whereas – тогда как
---	---

**Союзные слова:**

<b>Относительные местоимения:</b> who – кто, который whose – которого	what – что, который which, that – который
<b>Наречия:</b> when – когда where – где	how – как why – почему

**Сравнительные союзы:**

than – чем as... as – такой... как	not so... as – не такой... как the... the... – чем... тем...
---------------------------------------	---

*Приложение Н. Предлоги*

**Предлоги времени**

<b>Предлоги</b>	<b>Выражения</b>
<b>at</b>	<p><i>exact time</i> at 8 o'clock, 8 sharp, 10 (minutes) past 8, 14 minutes past 8, a quarter past 8 = 8 fifteen, half past 8 = 8 thirty, a quarter to 9, 14 minutes to 9, 10 to 9, 14.00 (fourteen hundred hours), 8 a.m. (before noon), 8 p.m. (after midday)</p> <p><i>meal times</i> <i>time points</i> at lunch (tea, dinner) time at dawn, sunset, noon = midday = 12 a.m., midnight = 12 p.m., night, the beginning (middle, end) of the day (week, month, year, century), the end of May, the weekend</p> <p><i>festivals</i> <i>age</i> + <i>time</i> <i>others</i> at Christmas(-time), Easter, the New Year at the age of 25 = at 25 at this (that, the same) time, "(At) What time do you arrive?" at last, at once = immediately, yesterday (tomorrow) at noon, late at night</p>

<b>on</b>	<i>day parts</i>  <i>days of the week</i>  <i>dates</i>  <i>day + date</i>  <i>particular occasions</i>  <i>anniversaries</i>  <i>festivals</i>  <i>other</i>	<p>on Monday morning(s)/evening(s), on the following Monday, on a spring morning on Sunday(s), weekdays</p> <p>on May 1/1st = on 1st May (on the 1st of May, on May the 1st, on May 1st – <i>Am.E.</i>)  on Monday, May 1st  on that day/evening</p> <p>on your birthday, on your wedding day, on vacation, on holiday(s)  on Christmas Day, on New Year's Day  on time (at the correct time)</p>
<b>in</b>	<i>day parts</i>  <i>months</i>  <i>seasons</i>  <i>years</i>    <i>centuries</i>  <i>time periods</i>    <i>other</i>	<p>in the morning(s), afternoon, evening, in daylight</p> <p>in May, in the month of May</p> <p>in (the) summer</p> <p>in 2003 (twenty oh three), in 2000 (in the year two thousand), in 48 B.C.</p> <p>in the 20th century</p> <p>in time (you are not late), in no time, in that time, in that age, in the holidays, in such a short time, in the (near) future/past</p> <p>in five minutes, in an hour and a half, in ten days = in ten days' time, in a year</p>
<b>for</b>		<p>for a moment, for two minutes, for the past two months, for the last several years, for many years, for five days, for some time, for (quite) a long time, for the time being</p>
<b>after</b>  <b>before</b>   <b>between</b>  <b>by</b>  <b>during</b>  <b>from... to</b>  <b>over</b>  <b>since</b>  <b>till/until</b>  <b>within</b>		<p>after 8 o'clock, after midday/noon, after lunch</p> <p>before 8 o'clock, before the beginning of May, before midnight/noon</p> <p>between 8 p.m. and 8 a.m.</p> <p>by 8 o'clock, by the end of the year, by the time, by early 2003, by far – до сих пор</p> <p>during the lesson</p> <p>from Monday to Friday</p> <p>over the weekend, over the past two decades</p> <p>since 2001</p> <p>till Monday, until 8 o'clock</p> <p>within an hour and a half</p>

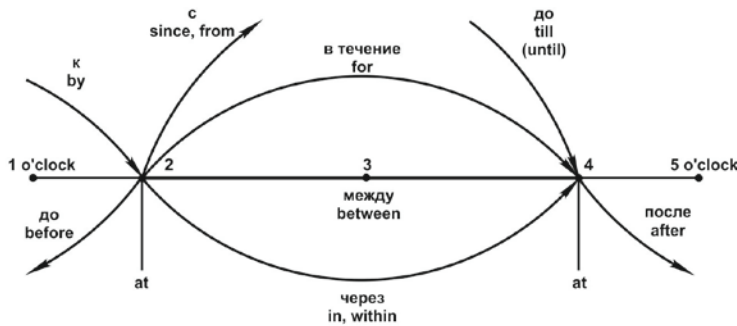


		<p>this / that / last / next → week / month / year / century / morning (afternoon, evening) / Sunday</p> <p>yesterday (tomorrow) morning (night, evening)</p> <p>last night = yesterday night/evening</p> <p>this evening = tonight</p> <p>this (=next) January, Christmas</p> <p>this coming week, this time next week</p> <p>all the day = the whole day, all day/night long, all the week long, all the while</p> <p>every year, every fortnight</p> <p>once (twice) a day, two times a week</p> <p>the other day, the other morning, every other day, the day before</p> <p>the coming meeting</p> <p>late, of late, later on, recently, early/late this year, earlier this week</p>
--	--	--

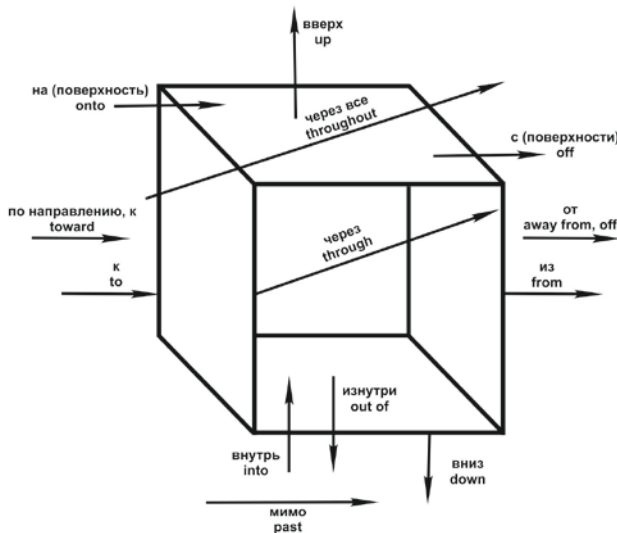
**Время: частное → общее:** time + day + date + year

He was born at 9.15 on Tuesday December 11th, 1984.

**Предлоги времени**



**Предлоги направления**



## READING FOR PLEASURE

### JOKES

#### **You Should Know Foreign Languages!**

Once upon a time there was a mouse in the mouse-hole. One day it sat up and listened attentively, and as it did so it heard someone bark.

“Now”, thought the mouse, “that’ll be a dog. I might as well go out. I don’t think dogs eat mice”.

That was sound logic. And the mouse went out. However, the moment it did so a cat pounced on it and ate it (for it was the cat that had barked).

“There’s no doubt it’s worthwhile learning foreign languages”, said the cat to himself, and he was certainly quite right!

### RIDDLES

#### **Solve the following riddles**

1. What kind of clothes do lawyers wear?
2. What do you have if an ax falls on your car?
3. What is in the army and is corny?
4. What do you call a man when a Marine sits on him?
5. An old fashioned bike wheel has 21 spokes. How many spaces are between the spokes – 20, 21, or 22?
6. Where did Pilgrims land when they arrived in America?
7. Who succeeded the first President?
8. When is the best time to have lunch?
9. When should you strike a match?
10. What makes a man bald-headed?
11. What always ends everything?
12. What is it that one needs most in the long run?
13. What animal keeps the best time?
14. Why should you always carry a watch when crossing a desert?
15. A man went on a trip on Friday, stayed for 2 days and returned on Friday. How is that possible?
16. What has 4 wheels and flies?
17. How do you make a Venetian blind?
18. How do you get to Carnegie Hall?
19. Think fast: There’s an electric train traveling south. The wind is from the north-west. In which direction would the smoke from the train be blowing?
20. What is the second most used letter in the English language? Hint: it is also the first letter of the most used word in the English language.

21. How can you avoid hitting your fingers when driving in a nail with a hammer?
22. Why did the bubble gum cross the road?
23. What walks on 4 legs in the morning, 2 legs in the afternoon, and 3 legs in the evening?
24. What 5 letter word can have its last 4 letters removed and still sound the same?
25. If you see a bird sitting on a twig, how could you get the twig without disturbing the bird?
26. When is a yellow dog most likely to enter a house?
27. What has a head like a cat, feet like a cat, a tail like a cat, but isn't a cat?
28. When is a doctor most annoyed?
29. Why isn't your nose twelve inches long?
30. What has five eyes, but cannot see?
31. What is it that by losing an eye has nothing left but a nose?
32. What has a foot on each end and one in the middle?
33. Which one of American Presidents had the largest shoes?
34. Some months have thirty days and some months have thirty-one days. How many months have twenty-eight days?
35. At the hardware store I was quoted 12 cents for one, 24 cents for 50, and 36 cents for 144. I wanted six. What was I buying and how much did it cost me?
36. A chessboard has squares that are two inches by two inches by two inches. What is the diameter of the largest circle that can be drawn on the board in such a way that the circle's circumference is entirely on black squares?
37. Compose a grammatical and sensible sentence in which all words begin with the same sound and yet none begin with the same letter.
38. Now compose a grammatical and sensible sentence in which all words begin with the same letter and yet none begin with the same sound.
39. I started 2 watches at the same time, It turned out that one of them went two minutes per hour too slow, and the other went one minute per hour too fast. When I looked at them again, the faster one was exactly one hour ahead of the other. How long had the watches been running?
40. What is so unusual about the number 2520?
41. My first wears my second; my third might be what my first would acquire if he went to sea. Put together my one, two, three, and the belle of New York is the girl for me. What one word am I?
42. If two boys and a girl can beat their father in a tug-of-war, but their mother can win against a boy and two girls, who should win a contest between the father and a girl against the other and a boy?
43. What is the difference between a farmer and a seamstress?
44. If 20 blackbirds are on a fence and you shoot one, how many remain?

45. What was given to you, belongs to you exclusively and yet is used more by your friends than by yourself?
46. What is it that we often return but never borrow?
47. Every time you stand up, you lose this. What is it?
48. What is the hardest thing to deal with?
49. What is the most important thing in the world?
50. What runs around town all day and lies under the bed at night with its tongue hanging out?
51. If all the letters in the alphabet were on top of the highest mountain, which letter must leave first?
52. What is the difference between an oak tree and a tight shoe?
53. How are a jeweler and a jailer alike?
54. Why was it so hard to find Abe Lincoln in Washington DC?
55. Where did King Arthur learn to joust?
56. How much water can you put into an empty 2 quart jar?
57. What stars should you stay away from?
58. What can you count on no matter what?
59. What is the happiest state in the USA?
60. Why would you put money in a freezer?
61. What teaches without talking?

## **PROVERBS**

1. A country without a language is a country without a soul. (Irish)
2. A nation without a language is a nation without a heart. (Welsh)
3. Language is the soul of a nation. (Indonesian)
4. Languages differ but coughs are the same. (Nigerian)
5. In language there is life, in language there is death. (Hawaiian)
6. He who does not love their national language is worse than a putrid fish. (Filipino)
7. Open your ears to the ancestors and you will understand the language of spirits. (African)
8. Language is not plain. (African)
9. If you want people to understand you, you speak their language. (African)
10. A filthy mouth will not utter decent language. (Chinese)
11. As the man is, so is his language. (Danish)
12. As long as a language lives, the people will not perish. (Czech)
13. Words are the leaves of the tree of language, of which, if some fall away, a new succession takes their place. (French)
14. You must answer the devil in his own language. (Indian)
15. Arabic is a language, Persian is a delicacy and Turkish is an art. (Persian)
16. Love has its own language, but marriage falls back on the local dialect. (Russian)

17. Spanish is the language of lovers, Italian is for singers, French for diplomats, and German for horses. (Spanish)
18. Love understands all languages. (Romanian)
19. Kindness is a language which the blind can see and the deaf can hear. (Traditional)

## LANGUAGE TEST

### Choose the correct answer.

1. How many people speak English as their native language?  
a) 200 million; b) 300 million; c) 375 million
2. What place does English take in the world according to the number of native speakers?  
a) the first; b) the second; c) the third
3. In what country is there the greatest number of English native speakers?  
a) Great Britain; b) the USA; c) Australia
4. How many words do you think there are in the English language?  
a) 300,000; b) 500,000; c) 1 million
5. How many new words appear in the English language annually?  
a) about 100; b) about 300; c) about 500
6. How many native words are there in the English language?  
a) 30%; b) 50%; c) 70%
7. What percentage of the Internet is in English?  
a) 65%; b) 86%; c) 92%
8. Which is the most common letter in English?  
a) 'a'; b) 'e'; c) 'i'
9. Which is the least common letter in English?  
a) 'q'; b) 'x'; c) 'z'
10. Which English word has the most definitions?  
a) get; b) have; c) set
11. Which word is the most frequently used in conversation?  
a) Yes; b) No; c) I
12. What does the American English word 'zucchini' mean in British English?  
a) radish; b) courgette; c) leek
13. Which word is used more in American English than British English?  
a) mom; b) mum; c) mummy
14. How many words begin with 'x' in English?  
a) about 80 words; b) about 120 words; c) about 250 words
15. What does 'I don't Adam and Eve you' mean in Cockney?  
a) I don't understand you; b) I don't believe you; c) I don't love you
16. What is the sentence 'Madam, I'm Adam' which is the same when you spell it backwards? It is ...  
a) an anagram; b) a rhyme; c) a palindrome

*Учебное издание*

**Филиппов Александр Анатольевич,  
Кусков Михаил Иванович,  
Кармазина Наталья Владимировна и др.**

**STUDYING CULTURE  
АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК**

*Учебно-методическое пособие*

Корректор В. Б. Кудласевич  
Технический редактор Л. Н. Мельник

Подписано в печать 12.09.2022. Формат 60x84 <sup>1</sup>/<sub>16</sub>.  
Бумага офисная. Ризография.  
Усл. печ. л. 12,91. Уч.-изд. л. 9,65. Тираж 200 экз. Заказ 765.

Издатель и полиграфическое исполнение:  
учреждение образования  
«Белорусский государственный университет культуры и искусств».  
Свидетельство о государственной регистрации издателя, изготовителя,  
распространителя печатных изданий № 1/177 от 12.02.2014.  
ЛП № 02330/456 от 23.01.2014.  
Ул. Рабкоровская, 17, 220007, г. Минск.

